Guidelines for Implementation: DASH-IF Interoperability Points

April 7, 2015

DASH Industry Forum

Version 3.0 (Final Version)



1 Scope

2 The scope of the interoperability points defined in this document is to provide support for high-

3 quality video distribution for over the top services using H.264/AVC and H.265/HEVC. Both live

4 and on-demand services are supported. The features address relevant use cases for live ser-

5 vices, ad insertion, trick modes, content protection and subtitling. Extensions for multi-channel

6 audio are defined.

1 Disclaimer

This is a document made available by DASH-IF. The technology embodied in this document may
be covered under patents, including patents owned by such companies. No patent license, either
implied or express, is granted to you by this document. This draft specification is provided on an
as-is basis without any warranty whatsoever.

- In addition, this document may include references to documents and/or technologies controlled by third parties. Those documents and technologies may be subject to third party rules and licensing terms. No intellectual property license, either implied or ex-press, to any third party ma-
- 9 terial is granted to you by this document or DASH-IF. DASH-IF makes no any warranty whatso-
- 10 ever for such third party material.
- 11

12

- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16
- 17

1 Contents

| 2 | GUIDELINES FO | DR IMPLEMENTATION: DASH-IF INTEROPERABILITY POINTS | I | |
|----|-------------------|--|----|--|
| 3 | SCOPE1 | | | |
| 4 | DISCLAIMER | | 2 | |
| 5 | CONTENTS | | | |
| 6 | | ES | | |
| | | | | |
| 7 | | 5 | | |
| 8 | ACRONYMS, A | BBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS | 9 | |
| 9 | REFERENCES | | 11 | |
| 10 | 1. INTRODU | | 1 | |
| 11 | 2. CONTEXT | AND CONVENTIONS | 2 | |
| 12 | 2.1. Rela | TION TO MPEG-DASH AND OTHER DASH SPECIFICATIONS | 2 | |
| 13 | 2.2. Com | IPATIBILITY AND EXTENSIONS TO EARLIER VERSIONS | | |
| 14 | 2.2.1. | Summary of Version 3 Modifications | 3 | |
| 15 | 2.2.2. | Backward-Compatibility Considerations | | |
| 16 | 2.3 . Use | OF KEY WORDS | 4 | |
| 17 | 2.3.1. | Background | 4 | |
| 18 | 2.3.2. | Key Words | 4 | |
| 19 | 2.3.3. | Mapping to DASH-IF Assets | 5 | |
| 20 | 2.4. DEFI | NITION AND USAGE OF INTEROPERABILITY POINTS | | |
| 21 | 2.4.1. | Profile Definition in ISO/IEC 23009-1 | 6 | |
| 22 | 2.4.2. | Usage of Profiles | 6 | |
| 23 | 2.4.3. | Interoperability Points and Extensions | 7 | |
| 24 | 3. DASH-RE | LATED ASPECTS | 7 | |
| 25 | 3.1. Scor | PE | 7 | |
| 26 | 3.2. DAS | Н Formats | 8 | |
| 27 | 3.2.1. | Introduction | 8 | |
| 28 | 3.2.2. | Media Presentation Description constraints for v1 & v2 Clients | | |
| 29 | 3.2.3. | Segment format constraints | | |
| 30 | 3.2.4. | Presence of Attributes and Elements | | |
| 31 | 3.2.5. | MPD Dimension Constraints | | |
| 32 | 3.2.6. | Generic Metadata | | |
| 33 | 3.2.7. | DASH Timing Model | | |
| 34 | 3.2.8. | Bandwidth and Minimum Buffer Time | | |
| 35 | 3.2.9. | Trick Mode Support | | |
| 36 | 3.2.10. | Adaptation Set Constraints | | |
| 37 | 3.2.11. | Media Time Information of Segment | | |
| 38 | 3.2.12. | Content Offering with Periods | | |
| 39 | 3.3. CLIEF | NT IMPLEMENTATION REQUIREMENTS AND GUIDELINES | 20 | |
| 40 | 3.3.1. | Overview | | |

| 1 | 3.3.2. | DASH Client Guidelines | |
|----|-------------|--|----|
| 2 | 3.3.3. | Seamless switching | |
| 3 | 3.3.4. | DASH Client Requirements | |
| 4 | 3.4. Tra | NSPORT AND PROTOCOL-RELATED ISSUES | |
| 5 | 3.4.1. | General | |
| 6 | 3.4.2. | Server Requirements and Guidelines | |
| 7 | 3.4.3. | Client Requirements and Guidelines | |
| 8 | 3.5. Syn | CHRONIZATION CONSIDERATIONS | |
| 9 | 3.6. Con | NSIDERATIONS FOR LIVE SERVICES | |
| 10 | 3.7. Com | NSIDERATIONS ON AD INSERTION | |
| 11 | 4. LIVE SER | VICES | 23 |
| 12 | - | RODUCTION | - |
| 13 | | erview Dynamic and Live Media Presentations | |
| 14 | | JAMIC SEGMENT DOWNLOAD | |
| 15 | 4.3.1. | Background and Assumptions | |
| 16 | 4.3.2. | Preliminaries | |
| 17 | 4.3.3. | Service Offering Requirements and Guidelines | |
| 18 | 4.3.4. | Client Operation, Requirements and Guidelines | |
| 19 | 4.3.5. | Additional DVB-DASH alignment aspects | |
| 20 | | PLE LIVE SERVICE OFFERING INCLUDING MPD UPDATES | |
| 21 | 4.4.1. | Background and Assumptions | |
| 22 | 4.4.2. | Preliminaries | |
| 23 | 4.4.3. | Service Offering Requirements and Guidelines | |
| 24 | 4.4.4. | MPD-based Live Client Operation based on MPD | |
| 25 | 4.5. MP | D AND SEGMENT-BASED LIVE SERVICE OFFERING | |
| 26 | 4.5.1. | Preliminaries | |
| 27 | 4.5.2. | Service Offering Requirements and Guidelines | |
| 28 | 4.5.3. | Client Requirements and Guidelines | 61 |
| 29 | 4.6. Pro | DVISIONING OF LIVE CONTENT IN ON-DEMAND MODE | 63 |
| 30 | 4.6.1. | Scenario | |
| 31 | 4.6.2. | Content Offering Requirements and Recommendations | 63 |
| 32 | 4.6.3. | Client Behavior | 64 |
| 33 | 4.7. Ava | ALABILITY TIME SYNCHRONIZATION BETWEEN CLIENT AND SERVER | |
| 34 | 4.7.1. | Background | 64 |
| 35 | 4.7.2. | Service Provider Requirements and Guidelines | 65 |
| 36 | 4.7.3. | Client Requirements and Guidelines | 65 |
| 37 | 4.8. Roe | BUST OPERATION | 66 |
| 38 | 4.8.1. | Background | |
| 39 | 4.8.2. | Tools for Robust Operations | |
| 40 | 4.8.3. | Synchronization Loss of Segmenter | 67 |
| 41 | 4.8.4. | Encoder Clock Drift | |
| 42 | 4.8.5. | Segment Unavailability | |
| 43 | 4.8.6. | Swapping across Redundant Tools | |
| 44 | 4.8.7. | Service Provider Requirements and Guidelines | |
| 45 | 4.8.8. | Client Requirements and Guidelines | |
| 46 | 4.9. Inti | EROPERABILITY ASPECTS | |

| 1 | 4.9.1. | Introduction | |
|--|--|---|--|
| 2 | 4.9.2. | Simple Live Operation | |
| 3 | 4.9.3. | Main Live Operation | |
| 4 | 5. AD INS | ERTION IN DASH | 70 |
| 5 | 5.1. IN | ITRODUCTION | |
| 6 | 5.1.1. | General | |
| 7 | 5.1.2. | DASH Concepts | |
| 8 | 5.2. A | RCHITECTURES | 74 |
| 9 | 5.3. Se | ERVER-BASED ARCHITECTURE | 75 |
| 10 | 5.3.1. | Introduction | |
| 11 | 5.3.2. | Mapping to DASH | |
| 12 | 5.3.3. | Workflows | |
| 13 | 5.3.4. | Examples | |
| 14 | 5.4. A | PP-BASED ARCHITECTURE | |
| 15 | 5.4.1. | Mapping to DASH | |
| 16 | 5.4.2. | Workflows | |
| 17 | 5.5. E> | XTENSIONS FOR AD INSERTION | |
| 18 | 5.5.1. | Asset Identifiers | |
| 19 | 5.5.2. | Remote Periods | |
| 20 | 5.5.3. | User-defined events | |
| 21 | | ITEROPERABILITY ASPECTS | |
| 22 | 5.6.1. | Server-based Ad insertion | |
| 23 | 5.6.2. | App-based Ad Insertion | |
| | | | |
| 24 | | | 01 |
| 24 25 | | | |
| 25 | 6.1. IN | ITRODUCTION | |
| 25 26 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI | ITRODUCTION | 91 91 |
| 25 26 27 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI <i>6.2.1</i> . | ITRODUCTION IDEO General | |
| 25 26 27 28 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI <i>6.2.1.</i> <i>6.2.2</i> . | ITRODUCTION IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video | |
| 25 26 27 28 29 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI <i>6.2.1.</i> <i>6.2.2.</i> <i>6.2.3</i> . | ITRODUCTION IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video | |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. | ITRODUCTION. IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata | 91 91 91 92 92 93 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. | ITRODUCTION IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. A | ITRODUCTION. IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 95 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. Au 6.3.1. | ITRODUCTION. IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints UDIO General | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 93 95 95 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. AI 6.3.1. 6.3.2. | ITRODUCTION. IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints UDIO General DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio. | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 95 95 95 96 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. AI 6.3.1. 6.3.2. 6.3.3. | ITRODUCTION. IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints UDIO DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio Audio Metadata | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 93 95 95 95 96 96 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. AI 6.3.1. 6.3.2. 6.3.3. 6.4. AI | ITRODUCTION. IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints UDIO General DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio Audio Metadata UXILIARY COMPONENTS | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 93 95 95 95 95 96 96 97 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. AI 6.3.1. 6.3.2. 6.3.3. 6.4. AI 6.4.1. | ITRODUCTION. IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints UDIO General DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio Audio Metadata UXILIARY COMPONENTS Introduction | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 95 95 95 96 96 97 |
| 25 26 27 28 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. AI 6.3.1. 6.3.2. 6.3.3. 6.4. AI 6.4.1. 6.4.2. | ITRODUCTION IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints UDIO General DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio Audio Metadata UXILIARY COMPONENTS Introduction Subtitles and Closed Captioning | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 95 95 95 95 95 95 95 95 97 97 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. AI 6.3.1. 6.3.2. 6.3.3. 6.4. AI 6.4.1. 6.4.2. 6.4.3. | ITRODUCTION. IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints UDIO General DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio. Audio Metadata UXILIARY COMPONENTS Introduction Subtitles and Closed Captioning. CEA-608/708 in SEI messages | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 93 93 95 95 95 96 96 96 97 97 97 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. AU 6.3.1. 6.3.2. 6.3.3. 6.4. AU 6.4.1. 6.4.2. 6.4.3. 6.4.4. | ITRODUCTION. IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints UDIO General DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio Audio Metadata UXILIARY COMPONENTS Introduction Subtitles and Closed Captioning. CEA-608/708 in SEI messages SMPTE Timed Text. | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 93 95 95 95 95 96 96 97 97 97 97 97 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. AI 6.3.1. 6.3.2. 6.3.3. 6.4. AI 6.4.2. 6.4.3. 6.4.4. 6.4.5. | ITRODUCTION. IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints UDIO General DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio Audio Metadata UXILIARY COMPONENTS Introduction Subtitles and Closed Captioning CEA-608/708 in SEI messages SMPTE Timed Text Annotation of Subtitles | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 93 93 95 95 95 95 95 96 96 97 97 97 97 97 97 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. AI 6.3.1. 6.3.2. 6.3.3. 6.4. AI 6.4.2. 6.4.3. 6.4.4. 6.4.5. 7. CONTE | ITRODUCTION. IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints UDIO General DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio Audio Metadata UXILIARY COMPONENTS Introduction Subtitles and Closed Captioning CEA-608/708 in SEI messages SMPTE Timed Text Annotation of Subtitles NT PROTECTION RELATED ASPECTS | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 95 95 95 96 96 96 97 97 97 97 97 97 97 97 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. AI 6.3.1. 6.3.2. 6.3.3. 6.4. AI 6.4.1. 6.4.2. 6.4.3. 6.4.4. 6.4.5. 7. CONTE 7.1. IN | ITRODUCTION IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints UDIO General DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio. Audio Metadata UXILIARY COMPONENTS Introduction Subtitles and Closed Captioning. CEA-608/708 in SEI messages SMPTE Timed Text. Annotation of Subtitles. NT PROTECTION RELATED ASPECTS ITRODUCTION. | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 95 95 95 96 96 96 97 97 97 97 97 97 101 102 102 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. AI 6.3.1. 6.3.2. 6.3.3. 6.4. AI 6.4.1. 6.4.2. 6.4.3. 6.4.4. 6.4.5. 7. CONTE 7.1. IN 7.2. BJ | ITRODUCTION IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints UDIO General DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio Audio Metadata UXILIARY COMPONENTS Introduction Subtitles and Closed Captioning CEA-608/708 in SEI messages SMPTE Timed Text Annotation of Subtitles NT PROTECTION RELATED ASPECTS ITRODUCTION ASE TECHNOLOGIES SUMMARY | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 95 95 95 95 96 96 96 97 97 97 97 97 97 97 97 101 102 102 |
| 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 | 6.1. IN 6.2. VI 6.2.1. 6.2.2. 6.2.3. 6.2.4. 6.2.5. 6.3. AI 6.3.1. 6.3.2. 6.3.3. 6.4. AI 6.4.1. 6.4.2. 6.4.3. 6.4.4. 6.4.5. 7. CONTE 7.1. IN 7.2. BJ | ITRODUCTION IDEO General DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video Video Metadata Adaptation Sets Constraints UDIO General DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio. Audio Metadata UXILIARY COMPONENTS Introduction Subtitles and Closed Captioning. CEA-608/708 in SEI messages SMPTE Timed Text. Annotation of Subtitles. NT PROTECTION RELATED ASPECTS ITRODUCTION. | 91 91 91 92 92 93 93 93 93 93 95 95 95 96 96 96 97 97 97 97 97 97 97 101 102 102 102 |

| 1 | 7.3.2. | ISO BMFF Structure Overview | 106 |
|----------|----------------------------|---|-----|
| 2 | 7.4. MF | PD SUPPORT FOR ENCRYPTION AND DRM SIGNALING | 107 |
| 3 | 7.4.1. | Use of the Content Protection Descriptor | 107 |
| 4 | 7.5. AD | DITIONAL CONTENT PROTECTION CONSTRAINTS | |
| 5 | 7.5.1. | ISO BMFF Content Protection Constraints | |
| 6 | 7.5.2. | MPD Content Protections Constraints | 109 |
| 7 | 7.5.3. | Other Content Protections Constraints | 110 |
| 8 | 7.5.4. | Encryption of Different Representations | 111 |
| 9 | 7.5.5. | Encryption of Multiple Periods | 111 |
| 10 | 7.5.6. | DRM System Identification | |
| 11 | 7.5.7. | Protection of Media Presentations that Include SD, HD and UHD Adaptation Sets | 112 |
| 12 | | DRKFLOW OVERVIEW | |
| 13 | 7.7. Co | MMON ENCRYPTION TEST-DRM SIMULATION | 117 |
| 14 | 7.7.1. | Introduction | 117 |
| 15 | 7.7.2. | Test of Common Encryption | 118 |
| 16 | 7.7.3. | ContentProtection descriptor | |
| 17 | 7.7.4. | Test Scenarios | 119 |
| 18 | 8. DASH-IF | INTEROPERABILITY POINTS | 120 |
| 19 | | RODUCTION | - |
| 20 | | SH-AVC/264 main | |
| 21 | 8.2.1. | Introduction | |
| 22 | 8.2.2. | Definition | |
| 23 | - | султасти SH-AVC/264 ніgн | |
| 24 | 8.3.1. | Introduction | |
| 25 | 8.3.2. | Definition | |
| 26 | | SH-IF IOP SIMPLE | |
| 27 | 8.4.1. | Introduction | |
| 28 | 8.4.2. | Definition | |
| 29 | 8.5. DA | SH-IF IOP Main | |
| 30 | 8.5.1. | Introduction | |
| 31 | 8.5.2. | Definition | |
| 32 | | CHANNEL AUDIO EXTENSION | |
| 32 33 | | | - |
| 33 34 | | DPE CHNOLOGIES | |
| 34 35 | | Dolby Multichannel Technologies | |
| 35 36 | 9.2.1. 9.2.2. | Dorby Multichanner Technologies DTS-HD | |
| 30 37 | 9.2.2. 9.2.3. | DTS-нD MPEG Surround | |
| 38 | 9.2.3. 9.2.4. | MPEG Surround MPEG-4 High Efficiency AAC Profile v2, level 6 | |
| 39 | | ENT IMPLEMENTATION GUIDELINES | |
| 40 | | | |
| 40 41 | 9.4. Ext <i>9.4.1</i> . | ENSIONS | |
| 41 42 | 9.4.1. 9.4.2. | Dolby Extensions | |
| 42 43 | 9.4.2. 9.4.3. | DOIDY Extensions DTS-HD Interoperability Points | |
| 43 44 | 9.4.3. 9.4.4. | MPEG Surround Interoperability Points | |
| 44 45 | 9.4.4. 9.4.5. | MPEG Surround Interoperability Points MPEG HE-AAC Multichannel Interoperability Points | |
| | | | |
| 46 | ANNEX A | EXAMPLES FOR PROFILE SIGNALLING | 1 |

| 1 | ANNEX B | LIVE SERVICES - USE CASES AND ARCHITECTURE | 2 |
|----|----------|---|-----|
| 2 | B.1 BA | ASELINE USE CASES | |
| 3 | B.1.1 | Use Case 1: Live Content Offered as On-Demand | . 2 |
| 4 | B.1.2 | Use Case 2: Scheduled Service with known duration and Operating at live edge | . 2 |
| 5 | B.1.3 | Use Case 3: Scheduled Service with known duration and Operating at live edge and time | |
| 6 | shift bu | ffer | . 2 |
| 7 | B.1.4 | Use Case 4: Scheduled Live Service known duration, but unknown Segment URLs | . 2 |
| 8 | B.1.5 | Use Case 5: 24/7 Live Service | . 2 |
| 9 | B.1.6 | Use Case 6: Approximate Media Presentation Duration Known | . 2 |
| 10 | B.2 B/ | ASELINE ARCHITECTURE FOR DASH-BASED LIVE SERVICE | 3 |
| 11 | B.3 DI | STRIBUTION OVER MULTICAST | . 3 |
| 12 | Β.4 Tγ | PICAL PROBLEMS IN LIVE DISTRIBUTION | |
| 13 | B.4.1 | Introduction | .4 |
| 14 | B.4.2 | Client Server Synchronization Issues | .4 |
| 15 | B.4.3 | Synchronization Loss of Segmenter | |
| 16 | B.4.4 | Encoder Clock Drift | .5 |
| 17 | B.4.5 | Segment Unavailability | |
| 18 | B.4.6 | Swapping across Redundant Tools | .6 |
| 19 | B.4.7 | CDN Issues | |
| 20 | B.4.8 | High End-to-end Latency | |
| 21 | B.4.9 | Buffer Management & Bandwidth Estimation | |
| 22 | B.4.10 | Start-up Delay and Synchronization Audio/Video | |
| 23 | B.5 At | DVANCED USE CASES | 7 |
| 24 | B.5.1 | Introduction | |
| 25 | B.5.2 | Use Case 7: Live Service with undetermined end | |
| 26 | B.5.3 | Use Case 8: 24/7 Live Service with canned advertisement | |
| 27 | B.5.4 | Use case 9: 24x7 live broadcast with media time discontinuities | |
| 28 | B.5.5 | Use case 10: 24x7 live broadcast with Segment discontinuities | .8 |

30 List of Figures

| 31 | Figure 1 Overview Timing Model | 14 |
|----|--|-------|
| 32 | Figure 2 DASH aspects of a DASH-AVC/264 client compared to a client supporting the unic | on of |
| 33 | DASH ISO BMFF live and on-demand profile | 21 |
| 34 | Figure 3 Different Client Models | 26 |
| 35 | Figure 4 Segment Availability on the Server for different time NOW (blue = valid but not | . yet |
| 36 | available segment, green = available Segment, red = unavailable Segment) | 38 |
| 37 | Figure 5 Simple Client Model | 43 |
| 38 | Figure 6 Advanced Client Model | 61 |
| 39 | Figure 7: XLink resolution | 71 |
| 40 | Figure 8: Server-based architecture | 75 |
| 41 | Figure 9: Using an asset identifier | 77 |
| 42 | Figure 10: Live Workflow | 78 |

| 1 | Figure 11: Ad Decision | 81 |
|----------|--|-----|
| 2 | Figure 12: Example of MPD for "Top Gun" movie | 84 |
| 3 | Figure 13: App-based architecture | 85 |
| 4 | Figure 14 Inband carriage of SCTE 35 cue message | 86 |
| 5 | Figure 15: In-MPD carriage of SCTE 35 cue message | 87 |
| 6 | Figure 16: Linear workflow for app-driven architecture | 88 |
| 7 | Figure 17: Visualization of box structure for single key content | 105 |
| 8 | Figure 18: Visualization of box structure with key rotation | 106 |
| 9 | Figure 19 Logical Roles that Exchange DRM Information and Media | 114 |
| 10 | Figure 20 Example of Information flow for DRM license retrieval | 116 |
| 11 | Figure 21 Typical Deployment Scenario for DASH-based live services | 3 |
| 12 13 | Figure 22 Typical Deployment Scenario for DASH-based live services partially MBMS (unidirectional FLUTE distribution) | • |

14 List of Tables

| 15 | Table 1 DASH-IF Interoperability Points | 1 |
|----------|---|---|
| 16 | Table 2 DASH-IF Interoperability Point Extensions | 2 |
| 17 18 | Table 3 Information related to Segment Information and Availability Times for a dynamic servic | |
| 19 | Table 4 – Basic Service Offering | 4 |
| 20 | Table 5 – Basic Service Offering | 7 |
| 21 | Table 6 Multi-Period Service Offering | 8 |
| 22 | Table 7 – Service Offering with Segment Timeline4 | 1 |
| 23 | Table 8 – Information related to Live Service Offering with MPD-controlled MPD Updates4 | 9 |
| 24 | Table 9 – Basic Service Offering with MPD Updates | 1 |
| 25 | Table 10 – Service Offering with Segment Timeline and MUP greater than 05 | 3 |
| 26 | Table 11 – Service Offering with MPD and Segment-based Live Services | 6 |
| 27 | Table 12 InbandEventStream@value attribute for scheme with a value | |
| 28 | "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012"5 | 8 |
| 29 | Table 13 – Basic Service Offering with Inband Events 6 | 0 |
| 30 | Table 14 H.264 (AVC) Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [11]9 | 2 |
| 31 | Table 15 Codecs parameter according to ISO/IEC 14496-15 [10]9 | 3 |
| 32 | Table 16 HE-AACv2 Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [11]9 | 6 |
| 33 | Table 17 Subtitle Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [11]10 | 1 |
| 34 | Table 18 Boxes relevant for DRM systems 10 | 6 |
| 35 | Table 19 Dolby Technologies: Codec Parameters and ISO BMFF encapsulation12 | 4 |
| 36 | Table 20: DTS Codec Parameters and ISO BMFF encapsulation12 | 4 |
| 37 38 | Table 21 Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [11] and ISO BMFF encapsulation for MPE Surround codec | |
| 39 | Table 22 Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [11] and ISO BMFF encapsulation12 | 6 |

Acronyms, abbreviations and definitions 2

| 3 | For acronyms, abbreviations and definitions refer to ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4]. | | |
|----------------------|--|---|--|
| 4 | In addition, the following definitions are used in this document: | | |
| 5 6 | Ad Break: A location or point in time where one or more ads may be scheduled for delivery; same as <i>avail</i> and <i>placement opportunity</i> . | | |
| 7 8 | | Service: functional entity that decides which ad(s) will be shown to the user. It loyment-specific and are out of scope for this document. | |
| 9 10 11 | service and de | termines which advertisement content (if at all) should be presented during the ad ecision ad in the cue data. | |
| 12 13 14 | pending switcl | n of time and parameters of the upcoming ad break. Note that cues can indicate a h to and ad break, pending switch to a next ad within an ad break, and pending switch eak to the main content. | |
| 15 16 | CDN node : functional entity returning a segment on request from DASH client. There are no assumptions on location of the node. | | |
| 17 18 19 20 | Packager : functional entity that processes conditioned content and produces media segments suitable for consumption by a DASH client. This entity is also known as fragmenter, encapsulater, or segmenter. Packager does not communicate directly with the server – its output is written to the origin. | | |
| 21 22 | Origin : functional entity that contains all media segments indicated in the MPD, and is the fallback if CDN nodes are unable to provide a cached version of the segment on client request. | | |
| 23 | Splice Point: | point in media content where | |
| 24 25 | | tor : functional entity returning an MPD on request from DASH client. It may be MPD on the fly or returning a cached one. | |
| 26 27 | XLink resolve DASH client. | er: functional entity which returns one or more remote elements on request from | |
| 28 | In addition, t | he following abbreviations and acronyms are used in this document: | |
| 29 | AAC | Advanced Audio Coding | |
| 30 | AVC | Advanced Video Coding | |

- 31 DRM **Digital Rights Management**
- 32 DTV **Digital Television**
- 33 FCC Federal Communications Commission
- 34 GOP Group-of-Pictures
- **High-Definition** 35 HD

| 1 | HDMI | High-Definition Multimedia Interface |
|----|--------|--|
| 2 | HE-AAC | High Efficiency AAC |
| 3 | HEVC | High-Efficiency Video Coding |
| 4 | KID | common Key IDentifier |
| 5 | IDR | Instantaneous Decoder Refresh |
| 6 | MPEG | Moving Pictures Experts Group |
| 7 | PCM | Pulse Code Modulation |
| 8 | PPS | Picture Parameter Set |
| 9 | PS | Parametric Stereo |
| 10 | SBR | Spectral Band Replication |
| 11 | SD | Standard Definition |
| 12 | SEI | Supplemental Enhancement Information |
| 13 | SMPTE | Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers |
| 14 | SPS | Sequence Parameter Set |
| 15 | TT | Timed Text |
| 16 | TTML | Timed Text Markup Language |
| | | |

² References

1

| 3 4 | [1] | DASH-IF DASH-264/AVC Interoperability Points, version 1.0, available at <u>http://dashif.org/w/2013/06/DASH-AVC-264-base-v1.03.pdf</u> |
|----------------|------|---|
| 5 6 | [2] | DASH-IF DASH-264/AVC Interoperability Points, version 2.0, available at http://dashif.org/w/2013/08/DASH-AVC-264-v2.00-hd-mca.pdf |
| 7 8 | [3] | ISO/IEC 23009-1:2012/Cor.1:2013 Information technology Dynamic adaptive streaming over HTTP (DASH) Part 1: Media presentation description and segment formats. |
| 9 10 | | Note: this document is superseded by reference [4], but maintained as the initial version of this document is provided in the above reference. |
| 11 12 13 | [4] | ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Cor.1:2015/Amd.1:2015 Information technology Dynamic adaptive streaming over HTTP (DASH) Part 1: Media presentation description and segment formats. |
| 14 15 | | Note: ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Amd.1:2015 is expected to be published shortly. The latest document is available in the MPEG output document w14860. |
| 16 17 | [5] | ISO/IEC 23009-2:2015/Amd.3 Information technology Dynamic adaptive streaming over HTTP (DASH) Part 1: Media presentation description and segment formats. |
| 18 19 | | Note: ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Amd.3:2015 is expected to be published by end of 2015. The latest document is available in the MPEG output document w15219. |
| 20 21 | [6] | ISO/IEC 23009-2:2014: Information technology Dynamic adaptive streaming over HTTP (DASH) Part 2: Conformance and Reference. |
| 22 23 24 | [7] | ISO/IEC 23009-3:2014: Information technology Dynamic adaptive streaming over HTTP (DASH) Part 3: Implementation Guidelines (Study of ISO/IEC PDTR, available as w13514). |
| 25 26 | [8] | ISO/IEC 14496-12:2015 Information technology Coding of audio-visual objects Part 12: ISO base media file format. |
| 27 28 | | Note: ISO/IEC 14496-12:2015 is expected to be published shortly. The latest document is available in the MPEG output document w15177. |
| 29 30 31 | [9] | ITU-T Recommendation H.264 (01/2012): "Advanced video coding for generic audiovis- ual services" ISO/IEC 14496-10:2010: "Information technology – Coding of audio-vis- ual objects – Part 10: Advanced Video Coding". |
| 32 33 34 | [10] | ISO/IEC 14496-15:2014/Cor 1:2015: Information technology Coding of audio-visual objects Part 15: Carriage of network abstraction layer (NAL) unit structured video in ISO base media file format. |
| 35 36 | [11] | IETF RFC 6381, The 'Codecs' and 'Profiles' Parameters for "Bucket" Media Types, August 2011. |

| 1 2 3 | [12] | ISO/IEC 14496-3:2009 - Information technology Coding of audio-visual objects Part 3: Audio with Corrigendum 1:2009, Corrigendum 2:2011, Corrigendum 3:2012, Amend- ment 1:2009, Amendment 2:2010, Amendment 3:2012, and Amendment 4:2014. |
|----------------------|------|--|
| 4 5 | [13] | ISO/IEC 14496-14:2003/Amd 1:2010 Information technology Coding of audio-visual objects Part 14: The MP4 File Format |
| 6 7 8 9 | [14] | 3GPP (2005-01-04). "ETSI TS 126 401 V6.1.0 (2004-12) - Universal Mobile Telecom- munications System (UMTS); General audio codec audio processing functions; Enhanced aacPlus general audio codec; General description (3GPP TS 26.401 version 6.1.0 Release 6)" |
| 10 | [15] | CEA-708-D: Digital Television (DTV) Closed Captioning, August 2008 |
| 11 12 | [16] | 3GPP TS 26.245: "Transparent end-to-end Packet switched Streaming Service (PSS); Timed text format" |
| 13 | [17] | W3C Timed Text Markup Language (TTML) 1.0, November 2010. |
| 14 | [18] | SMPTE ST 2052: "Timed Text" |
| 15 16 | [19] | W3C WebVTT - W3C Web Video Text Tracks, Living Standard — http://dev.w3.org/html5/webvtt/ |
| 17 18 19 20 | [20] | ITU-T Recommendation H.265 (07/2013): "Advanced video coding for generic audiovis- ual services" ISO/IEC 23008-2:2013: " High Efficiency Coding and Media Delivery in Heterogeneous Environments – Part 2: High Efficiency Video Coding", downloadable here: http://www.itu.int/rec/T-REC-H.265 |
| 21 22 | [21] | EBU Tech 3350, "EBU-TT, Part 1, Subtitling format definition", July 2012, http://tech.ebu.ch/docs/tech/tech3350.pdf?vers=1.0 |
| 23 | [22] | IETF RFC2616, Hypertext Transfer Protocol HTTP/1.1, June 1999. |
| 24 25 26 27 | | Note: DASH-IF is aware of the recent updates of HTTP/1.1 in the IETF with the new RFCs 723[05]. The group is currently investigating the detailed required changes to update the references. A revised version 3.1 addressing this issue is expected to be published within a short time. |
| 28 29 | [23] | Recommended Practice (Conversion from CEA 608 to SMPTE-TT) RP 2052-10-2012 https://www.smpte.org/sites/default/files/rp2052-10-2012.pdf |
| 30 31 | [24] | Recommended Practice (Conversion from CEA 708 to SMPTE-TT) RP 2052-11-2013 https://www.smpte.org/sites/default/files/RP2052-11-2013.pdf |
| 32 33 | [25] | ISO/IEC DIS 14496-30:2014, "Timed Text and Other Visual Overlays in ISO Base Media File Format". |
| 34 35 | [26] | ISO/IEC 23001-7:2015: "Information technology MPEG systems technologies Part 7: Common encryption in ISO base media file format files". |
| 36 37 | | Note: ISO/IEC 23001-7:2015 is expected to be published shortly. The latest document is available in the MPEG output document 14425. |
| 38 39 | [27] | DASH Industry Forum, "Guidelines for Implementation: DASH-AVC/264 Test Cases and Vectors". |

| 1 2 | [28] | DASH Industry Forum, "Guidelines for Implementation: DASH-AVC/264 Conformance Software", http://dashif.org/conformance.html. |
|----------------------------|------|---|
| 3 | [29] | DASH Identifiers Repository, available here: http://dashif.org/identifiers |
| 4 5 | [30] | DTS 9302J81100, "Implementation of DTS Audio in Media Files Based on ISO/IEC 14496", <u>http://www.dts.com/professionals/resources/resource-center.aspx</u> |
| 6 7 | [31] | ETSI TS 102 366 v1.2.1, Digital Audio Compression (AC-3, Enhanced AC-3) Standard (2008-08) |
| 8 9 | [32] | MLP (Dolby TrueHD) streams within the ISO Base Media File Format, version 1.0, September 2009. |
| 10 11 | [33] | ETSI TS 102 114 v1.3.1 (2011-08), "DTS Coherent Acoustics; Core and Extensions with Additional Profiles" |
| 12 13 | [34] | ISO/IEC 23003-1:2007 - Information technology MPEG audio technologies Part 1: MPEG Surround |
| 14 15 | [35] | DTS 9302K62400, "Implementation of DTS Audio in Dynamic Adaptive Streaming over HTTP (DASH)", <u>http://www.dts.com/professionals/resources/resource-center.aspx</u> |
| 16 17 | [36] | IETF RFC5905, "Network Time Protocol Version 4: Protocol and Algorithms Specifica- tion," June 2010. |
| 18 | [37] | IETF RFC 6265: "HTTP State Management Mechanism", April 2011. |
| 19 20 21 | [38] | DVB Document A168: "MPEG-DASH Profile for Transport of ISO BMFF Based DVB Services over IP Based Networks", July 2014, available here: https://www.dvb.org/re-sources/public/standards/a168_dvb-dash.pdf |
| 22 23 24 | [39] | ANSI/SCTE 128-1 2013: " AVC Video Constraints for Cable Television, Part 1 - Cod- ing", available here: http://www.scte.org/documents/pdf/Stand- ards/ANSI_SCTE%20128-1%202013.pdf |
| 25 26 | [40] | IETF RFC 2119, "Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels", April 1997. |
| 27 28 29 30 31 | [41] | ISO: "ISO 639.2, Code for the Representation of Names of Languages — Part 2: alpha-3 code," as maintained by the ISO 639/Joint Advisory Committee (ISO 639/JAC), http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/iso639jac.html; JAC home page: http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/iso639jac.html; ISO 639.2 standard online: http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/langhome.html. |
| 32 | [42] | CEA-608-E, Line 21 Data Service, March 2008. |
| 33 | [43] | IETF RFC 5234, "Augmented BNF for Syntax Specifications: ABNF", January 2008. |
| 34 35 | [44] | SMPTE ST 2086:2014, "Mastering Display Color Volume Metadata Supporting High Luminance And Wide Color Gamut Images" |
| 36 37 38 | [45] | ISO/IEC 23001-8:2013, "Information technology MPEG systems technologies Part 8: Coding-independent code points", available here: <u>http://standards.iso.org/ittf/Public-lyAvailableStandards/c062088_ISO_IEC_23001-8_2013.zip</u> |

| 1 | [46] | IETF RFC 7164, "RTP and Leap Seconds", March 2014 |
|----------|------|--|
| 2 3 | [47] | DASH Industry Forum, "Guidelines for Implementation: DASH264 Interoperability 3 Points", http://dashif.org/w/2013/08/DASH-AVC-264-v2.00-hd-mca.pdf . |
| 4 | [48] | IAB Video Multiple Ad Playlist (VMAP), http://www.iab.net/media/file/VMAPv1.0.pdf |
| 5 | [49] | IAB Video Ad Serving Template (VAST), <u>http://www.iab.net/media/file/VASTv3.0.pdf</u> |
| 6 | [50] | ANSI/SCTE 35 2014, Digital Program Insertion Cueing Message for Cable |
| 7 8 | [51] | ANSI/SCTE 67 2014, Recommended Practice for SCTE 35 Digital Program Insertion Cueing Message for Cable |
| 9 10 | [52] | SCTE DVS 1202, MPEG DASH for IP-Based Cable Services, Part 1: MPD Constraints and Extensions |
| 11 | [53] | SCTE DVS 1208, MPEG DASH for IP-Based Cable Services, Part 3: DASH/FF Profile |
| 12 13 | | Note: SCTE DVS 1202 and 1208 are expected to be published shortly as ANSI/SCTE standards. |
| 14 | [54] | EIDR ID Format - EIDR_ID_Format_v1.02_Jan2012-1.pdf, www.eidr.org |
| 15 16 | [55] | Common Metadata, TR-META-CM, ver. 2.0, January 3, 2013, available at <u>http://www.movielabs.com/md/md/v2.0/Common_Metadata_v2.0.pdf</u> |
| 17 | [56] | IETF RFC 4648, "The Base16, Base32, and Base64 Data Encodings", October 2006. |

2 1. Introduction

This document defines DASH-IF's interoperability points. The document includes interoperability
points for only this version of the document. For earlier versions, please refer to version 1 [1] and

version 2 of this document. DASH-IF recommends to deprecate the Interoperability Points in pre vious versions and deploy using one of the Interoperability Points and extensions in this document.

As a historical note, the scope of the initial DASH-AVC/264 interoperability point as issued in
version 1 of this document [1] was the basic support high-quality video distribution over the top.
Both live and on-demand services are supported.

In the second version of this document [2], HD video (up to 1080p) extensions and several multi-channel audio extensions are defined.

12 In this third version this document, only two DASH-264/AVC IOP are defined as well as two

13 extensions to support HEVC [20] are defined. Detailed refinements and improvements for DASH-

14 IF live services and for ad insertion were added. The main differentiations are, that one IOP adds

15 additional requirements on the client to support segment parsing.

16 This document defines the Interoperability Points as documented in Table 1 and Extensions as 17 defined in Table 2. The version in which each Interoperability Point and Extension was added is

18 also provided in the tables.

19 Note that all version 1 IOPs are also defined in version 2 and therefore referencing version [2] is

- 20 considered sufficient.
- 21

Table 1 DASH-IF Interoperability Points

| Interoperability Point | Identifier | Ver- sion | Refer- ence |
|------------------------|---|--------------|----------------|
| DASH-AVC/264 | http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264 | 1.0 | [2], 6.3 |
| DASH-AVC/264 SD | http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264#sd | 1.0 | [2], 7.3 |
| DASH-AVC/264 HD | http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264#hd | 2.0 | [2], 8.3 |
| DASH-AVC/264 main | http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264main | 3.0 | 8.2 |
| DASH-AVC/264 high | http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264high | 3.0 | 0 |
| DASH-IF IOP simple | http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash-if-simple | 3.0 | 8.4 |
| DASH-IF IOP main | http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash-if-main | 3.0 | 8.5 |

22 Note that all extensions defined in version 2 of this document are carried over into version 3.0

23 without any modifications. In order to maintain a single document, referencing in Table 2 is re-

stricted to this document.

1

Table 2 DASH-IF Interoperability Point Extensions

| Extension | Identifier | Ver sio n | Section |
|---|--|-----------------|---------|
| DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with Enhanced AC-3 | <pre>http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#ec- 3</pre> | 2.0 | 9.4.2.3 |
| DASH-IF multichannel exten- sion with Dolby TrueHD | http://dashif.org/guide- lines/dashif#mlpa | 2.0 | 9.4.2.3 |
| DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with DTS Digital Surround | http://dashif.org/guide- lines/dashif#dtsc | 2.0 | 9.4.3.3 |
| DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with DTS-HD High Resolution and DTS-HD Mas- ter Audio | http://dashif.org/guide- lines/dashif#dtsh | 2.0 | 9.4.3.3 |
| DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with DTS Express | http://dashif.org/guide- lines/dashif#dtse | 2.0 | 9.4.3.3 |
| DASH-IF multichannel exten- sion with DTS-HD Lossless (no core) | http://dashif.org/guide- lines/dashif#dtsl | 2.0 | 9.4.3.3 |
| DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with MPEG Sur- round | http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#mps | 2.0 | 9.4.4.3 |
| DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with HE-AACv2 level 4 | http://dashif.org/guide- lines/dashif#heaac-mc51 | 2.0 | 9.4.5.3 |
| DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with HE-AACv2 level 6 | http://dashif.org/guide- lines/dashif#heaac-mc71 | 2.0 | 9.4.5.3 |

2 Test cases and test vectors for DASH-AVC/264 Interoperability Points are provided in [27]. The
3 conformance and reference software for DASH-AVC/264 Interoperability Points is provided in
[28] (based on the MPEG conformance software [6]). DASH Identifiers for different categories

5 can be found online [29].

6 2. Context and Conventions

7 2.1. Relation to MPEG-DASH and other DASH specifications

8 Dynamic Adaptive Streaming over HTTP (DASH) is initially defined in the first edition of

9 ISO/IEC 23009-1 which was published in April 2012 and some corrections were done in 2013 [1].

1 In May 2014, ISO/IEC published the second version of ISO/IEC 23009-1 [5] that includes addi-

- 2 tional features and provide additional clarifications. The initial two versions of this document 2 where based on the first addition of ISO/IEC 22000 1. This require is based on the second difference in the second d
- where based on the first edition of ISO/IEC 23009-1. This version is based on the second edition
 of ISO/IEC 23009-1, i.e. ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 including Cor.1 and Amd.1 [5]. This means that
- also for all interoperability points that were initially defined in earlier versions of the document,
- also now the second edition serves as the reference. Backward-compatibility across different edi-
- 7 tion is handled by MPEG-DASH in ISO/IEC 23009-1 [5].

8 This document was generated in close coordination with DVB-DASH [38]. The tools and features
9 are aligned to the extent considered reasonable. To support implementers, this document attempts
10 to highlight any differences and/or further restrictions or extensions when compared to DVB11 DASH. However, as a disclaimer, this coverage is not considered complete.

12 **2.2. Compatibility and Extensions to Earlier Versions**

13 2.2.1. Summary of Version 3 Modifications

- 14 Version 3 of this document applies the following modifications compared to version 2 [2]:
- Reference to the second edition of ISO/IEC 23009-1 including amendment 1 and cor.1 [4], as well as well as Amendment 3 [5].
- 17 Add an explicit statement in DASH-264/AVC to forbid time code wrap around
- Definition on the usage of key words in section 2.3.
- Add more constraints on the usage of Trick Modes for improved interoperability in section 3.2.9.
- Add more constraints on the Representations in one Adaptation Set in section 3.2.10, especially when the bitstream switching is true.
- Add additional details on the usage of HTTP in section 3.4.
- Add H.265/HEVC as a codec and create IOPs for inclusion of this codec.
- Add CEA-608/708 closed captioning in SEI messages in section 6.4.3.
- Detailed description of simple and main live operation, with the latter including segment parsing in section 4.
- Detailed description of server-based and app-based ad insertion in section 5
- General editorial updates and clarifications
- Updates and clarification to section 7 on DRM and common encryption.
- **31** Update to references
- Relaxation of the audio encoding requirements in section 6.3.2.
- Add clarification on the usage of the minimum buffer time and bandwidth in section 3.2.8.
- Add an informative section on the timing model of DASH in section 3.2.7.
- Relax the use of the 'lmsg' brand for signaling the last segment in section 3.6.

1 • Simplification of the codecs table

2 2.2.2. Backward-Compatibility Considerations

Generally, content can be offered such that it can be consumed by version 2 and version 3 clients.
In such a case the restricted authoring should be used and it should be accepted that version 2
clients may ignore certain Representations and Adaptation Sets. Content Authors may also consider the publication of two MPDs, but use the same segment formats.

7 In terms of compatibility between version 2 and version 3, the following should be considered:

- The backward-compatibility across MPEG editions is handled in the second edition of ISO/IEC 23009-1 [5].
- General clarifications and updates are added
- Further restrictions on content authoring compared to version 2 are:
- 12 o forbid time code wrap around
- 13 the usage of DRM, especially the Content Protection element
- 14 o constraints on trick mode usage
- 15 o additional constraints on the usage of HTTP
- 16 Adaptation Set constraints
- 17 Relaxations are:
- 18 Permit usage of additional subtitling format based on CEA-608/708
- 19 the audio encoding requirements for HE-AACv2
- 20 o the use of the 'lmsg' brand for signaling the last segment
- 21 the ability to signal bitstream switching set to true
- 22 the use of remote elements with Xlink
- 23
- 24 **2.3. Use of Key Words**

25 **2.3.1. Background**

DASH-IF generally does not write specifications, but provides and documents guidelines for implementers to refer to interoperability descriptions. In doing so, the DASH-IF agreed to use key words in order to support readers of the DASH-IF documents to understand better how to interpret the language. The usage of key words in this document is provided below.

30 2.3.2. Key Words

- 31 The key word usage is aligned with the definitions in RFC 2119 [40], namely:
- SHALL: This word means that the definition is an absolute requirement of the specifica tion.

SHALL NOT This phrase means that the definition is an absolute prohibition of the specification.

- SHOULD This word means that there may exist valid reasons in particular circumstances
 to ignore a particular item, but the full implications must be understood and carefully
 weighed before choosing a different course.
- SHOULD NOT This phrase means that there may exist valid reasons in particular circumstances when the particular behavior is acceptable or even useful, but the full implications should be understood and the case carefully weighed before implementing any behavior described with this label.
- MAY: This word means that an item is truly optional. One vendor may choose to include the item because a particular marketplace requires it or because the vendor feels that it enhances the product while another vendor may omit the same item.

13 These key words are attempted to be used consistently in this document, but only in small letters.

14 2.3.3. Mapping to DASH-IF Assets

15 If an IOP document associates such a key word from above to a content authoring statement then16 the following applies:

- SHALL: The conformance software provides a conformance check for this and issues an *error* if the conformance is not fulfilled.
- SHALL NOT: The conformance software provides a conformance check for this and issues an *error* if the conformance is not fulfilled.
- SHOULD: The conformance software provides a conformance check for this and issues a *warning* if the conformance is not fulfilled.
- SHOULD NOT: The conformance software provides a conformance check for this and issues a *warning* if the conformance is not fulfilled.
- SHOULD and MAY: If present, the feature check of the conformance software documents a feature of the content.
- 27 If an IOP document associates such a key word from above to a DASH Client then the following28 applies:
- SHALL: Test content is necessarily provided with this rule and the reference client implements the feature.
- SHALL NOT: The reference client does not implement the feature.
- SHOULD: Test content is provided with this rule and the reference client implements the feature unless there is a justification for not implementing this.
- SHOULD NOT: The reference client does not implement the feature unless there is a justification for implementing this.
- MAY: Test content is provided and the reference client implements the feature if there is a justification this.

1 2.4. Definition and Usage of Interoperability Points

2 2.4.1. Profile Definition in ISO/IEC 23009-1

MPEG DASH defines formats for MPDs and Segments. In addition MPEG provides the ability to
further restrict the applied formats by the definition of *Profiles* as defined on section 8 of ISO/IEC
23009-1 [5]. Profiles of DASH are defined to enable interoperability and the signaling of the use
of features.

- 7 Such a profile can also be understood as permission for DASH clients that implement the features8 required by the profile to process the Media Presentation (MPD document and Segments).
- 9 Furthermore, ISO/IEC 23009-1 permits external organizations or individuals to define restrictions,

10 permissions and extensions by using this profile mechanism. It is recommended that such external

11 definitions be not referred to as profiles, but as *Interoperability Points*. Such an interoperability

12 point may be signalled in the Oprofiles parameter once a URI is defined. The owner of the

- 13 URI is responsible to provide sufficient semantics on the restrictions and permission of this in-14 teroperability point.
- This document makes use of this feature and provides a set of Interoperability Points. Therefore,based on the interoperability point definition, this document may be understood in two ways:
- a collection of content conforming points, i.e. as long as the content conforms to the restrictions as specified by the IOP, clients implementing the features can consume the content.
- a client capability points that enable content and service providers for flexible service provisioning to clients conforming to these client capabilities.

This document provides explicit requirements, recommendations and guidelines for content authoring that claims conformance to a profile (by adding the @profiles attribute to the MPD) as
well as for clients that are permitted to consume a media presentation that contains such a profile.

25 2.4.2. Usage of Profiles

- A Media Presentation may conform to one or multiple profiles/interoperability points and conforms to each of the profiles indicated in the MPD@profiles attribute is specified as follows:
- When ProfA is included in the MPD@profiles attribute, the MPD is modified into a profilespecific MPD for profile conformance checking using the following ordered steps:
- 30 1. The MPD@profiles attribute of the profile-specific MPD contains only ProfA.
- An AdaptationSet element for which @profiles does not or is not inferred to include ProfA is removed from the profile-specific MPD.
- 33 3. A Representation element for which @profiles does not or is not inferred to include
 34 ProfA is removed from the profile-specific MPD.
- 4. All elements or attributes that are either (i) in this Part of ISO/IEC 23009 and explicitly excluded by ProfA, or (ii) in an extension namespace and not explicitly included by ProfA, are removed from the profile-specific MPD.

- All elements and attributes that "may be ignored" according to the specification of ProfA are removed from the profile-specific MPD.
- 3 An MPD is conforming to profile ProfA when it satisfies the following:
- 4 1. ProfA is included in the MPD@profiles attribute.
- 5 2. The profile-specific MPD for ProfA conforms to ISO/IEC 23009-1
- 6 3. The profile-specific MPD for ProfA conforms to the restrictions specified for ProfA.
- 7 A Media Presentation is conforming to profile ProfA when it satisfies the following:
- 8 1. The MPD of the Media Presentation is conforming to profile ProfA as specified above.
- 9 2. There is at least one Representation in each Period in the profile-specific MPD for ProfA.
- The Segments of the Representations of the profile-specific MPD for ProfA conform to the restrictions specified for ProfA.

12 2.4.3. Interoperability Points and Extensions

- This document defines Interoperability Points and Extensions. Both concepts make use of the pro-file functionality of ISO/IEC 23009-1.
- 15 Interoperability Points provide a basic collection of tools and features to ensure that content/service
- 16 providers and client vendors can rely to support a sufficiently good audio-visual experience. Ex-
- tensions enable content/service providers and client vendors to enhance the audio-visual experi-
- 18 ence provided by an Interoperability Point in a conforming manner.
- 19 The only difference between Interoperability Points and Extensions is that Interoperability Points
- 20 define a full audio-visual experience and Extensions enhance the audio-visual experience in typi-
- cally only one dimension.
- 22 Examples for the usage of the <code>@profiles</code> signaling are provided in Annex A of this document.

23 3. DASH-Related Aspects

24 **3.1. Scope**

DASH-IF Interoperability Points use ISO base media file format [8] based encapsulation and provide significant commonality with a superset of the ISO BMFF On-Demand and the ISO BMFF
Live profile as defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4], sections 8.3 and 8.4, respectively. DASH-IF IOPs
are intended to provide support for on-demand and live content. The primary constraints imposed
by this profile are the requirement that each Representation is provided in one of the following two
ways

- as a single Segment, where Subsegments are aligned across Representations within an Ad aptation Set. This permits scalable and efficient use of HTTP servers and simplifies seam less switching. This is mainly for on-demand use cases.
- as a sequence of Segments where each Segment is addressable by a template-generated
 URL. Content generated in this way is mainly suitable for dynamic and live services.

1 In both cases (Sub)Segments begin with Stream Access Points (SAPs) of type 1 or 2 [8], i.e. regular 2 IDR frames in case of video. In addition, (Sub)Segments are constrained so that for switching 3 video Representations within one Adaptation Set the boundaries are aligned without gaps or over-4 laps in the media data. Furthermore, switching is possible by a DASH client that downloads, de-5 codes and presents the media stream of the come-from Representation and then switches to the go-6 to Representation by downloading, decoding and presenting the new media stream. No overlap in 7 downloading, decoding and presentation is required for seamless switching of Representations in 8 one Adaptation Set.

9 Additional constraints are documented for bitstream switching set to true as well as special case10 such as trick modes, etc.

11 3.2. DASH Formats

12 **3.2.1.** Introduction

This section introduces the detailed constraints of the MPD and the DASH segments in a descriptive way referring to ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4]. The DASH-based restrictions have significant com-

15 monality with the ISO BMFF Live and On-Demand profiles from the MPEG-DASH specification.

- 16 Specifically:
- Segment formats are based on ISO BMFF with fragmented movie files, i.e. (Sub)Segments are encoded as movie fragments containing a track fragment as defined in ISO/IEC 14496-12 [8], plus the following constraints to make each movie fragment independently decodable:
- Default parameters and flags shall be stored in movie fragments ('tfhd' or 'trun'
 box) and not track headers ('trex' box)
- The 'moof' boxes shall not use external data references, the flag 'default-baseis-moof' shall also be set (aka movie-fragment relative addressing) and dataoffset shall be used, i.e. base-data-offset-present shall not be used (follows ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4]).
- Alignment with ISO BMFF Live & On-Demand Profiles, i.e. within each Adaptation Set the following applies
- Fragmented movie files are used for encapsulation of media data
- (Sub)Segments are aligned to enable seamless switching
- Beyond the constraints provided in the ISO BMFF profiles, the following additional restrictionsare applied.
- IDR-like SAPs (i.e., SAPs type 2 or below) at the start of each (Sub)Segment for simple switching.
- Segments should have almost equal duration. The maximum tolerance of segment duration shall be ±50% and the maximum accumulated deviation over multiple segments shall be ±50% of the signaled segment duration (i.e. the @duration). Such fluctuations in actual segment duration may be caused by for example ad replacement or specific IDR frame

| 1 2 | placement. Note that the last segment in a Representation may be shorter according to ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4]. |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 3 4 5 6 7 | Note: If accurate seeking to specific time is required and at the same time a fast response is required one may use On-Demand profile for VoD or the Seg-mentTimeline based addressing. Otherwise the offset in segment duration compared to the actual media segment duration may result in a less accurate seek position for the download request, resulting in some increased initial start-up. |
| 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 | • If the SegmentTimeline element is used for the signaling of the Segment duration, the timing in the segment timeline shall be media time accurate and no constraints on segment duration deviation are added except the maximum segment duration as specified in the MPD. However, despite the usage of the the SegmentTimeline , it is not encouraged to use varying Segment durations. The SegmentTimeline element should only be used in order to signal occasional shorter Segments (possibly caused by encoder processes) or to signal gaps in the time line. |
| 15 16 | • only non-multiplexed Representations shall be used, i.e. each Representation only contains a single media component. |
| 17 | Addressing schemes are restricted to |
| 18 | templates with number-based addressing |
| 19 | templates with time-based addressing |
| 20 21 22 | • Subsegments with Segment Index. In this case either the @indexRange attribute shall be present or the RepresentationIndex element shall be present. Only a single sidx box shall be present. |
| 23 24 25 | Note 1: the external Representation Index was only added in the second edition [4]. If compatibility to v2.0 or earlier of this document is necessary, the external Representation Index shall not be used. |
| 26 27 | Note 2: The latter restriction was introduced in version 3 of this document based on deployment experience and to enable alignment with DVB DASH. |
| 28 29 30 31 32 33 | • In case multiple Adaptation Sets with @contentType='video' are offered, exactly one video Adaptation Set shall be signaled as the main one unless different Adaptation Sets contain the same content with different quality or different codecs. In the latter case, all Adaptation Sets with the same content shall be signaled as the main content. Signalling as main content shall be done by using the Role descriptor with @schemeIdUri="urn:mpeg:dash:role:2011" and @value="main". |
| 34 35 | • The content offering shall adhere to the presence rules of certain elements and attributes as defined section 3.2.4. |
| 36 | It is expected that a client conforming to such a profile is able to process content offered under |

37 these constraints. More details on client procedures are provided in section 3.3.

1 3.2.2. Media Presentation Description constraints for v1 & v2 Clients

2 3.2.2.1. Definition according to ISO/IEC 23009-1

This section follows a description according to ISO/IEC 23009-1. In section 3.2.2.2, a restricted
content offering is provided that provides a conforming offering.

NOTE: The term "ignored" in the following description means, that if an MPD is provided
and a client that complies with this interoperability point removes the element that may be
ignored, then the MPD is still complying with the constraints of the MPD and segments as
defined in ISO/IEC 23001-9, section 7.3.

9 The MPD shall conform to the ISO Base Media File Format Common profile as defined on
10 ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Amd.1:2015 [4], section 8.9, except for the following issues:

- Representations with @mimeType attribute application/xml+ttml shall not be ignored.
- 13 In addition, the Media Presentation Description shall conform to the following constraints:
- 14 Representation elements with a @subsegmentStartsWithSAP value set to
 15 3 may be ignored.
- 16 Representation elements with a @startsWithSAP value set to 3 may be
 17 ignored.
- If a Period contains multiple Adaptation Sets with @contentType="video" then at least one Adaptation Set shall contain a Role element <Role schemeIdUri="urn:mpeg:dash:role:2011" value="main"> and each Adaptation
 Set containing such a Role element shall provide perceptually equivalent media streams.
- 23 **3.2.2.2.** Simple Restricted Content Offering
- A conforming MPD offering based on the ISO BMFF Live Profile shall contain
- MPD@type set to static or set to dynamic.
 - MPD@profiles includes urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-live:2011
 - One or multiple Periods with each containing one or multiple Adaptation Sets and with each containing one or multiple Representations.
- The Representations contain or inherit a SegmentTemplate with \$Number\$ or
 \$Time\$ Identifier.
 - @segmentAlignment set to true for all Adaptation Sets
- 31 32

26

27

28

- A conforming MPD offering based on the ISO BMFF On-Demand Profile shall contain
- **34 MPD**@type set to static.
- MPD@profiles includes urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-ondemand:2011

- One or multiple Periods with each containing one or multiple Adaptation Sets and with each containing one or multiple Representations.
- 3 @subSegmentAlignment set to true for all Adaptation Sets
- 4

2

5 3.2.3. Segment format constraints

- Representations and Segments referred to by the Representations in the profile-specificMPD for this profile, the following constraints shall be met:
- 8 Representations shall comply with the formats defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1, section
 9 7.3.
- In Media Segments, all Segment Index ('sidx') and Subsegment Index ('ssix')
 boxes, if present, shall be placed before any Movie Fragment ('moof') boxes.
- Note: DVB DASH [38] permits only one single Segment Index box ('sidx') for the entire Segment. As
 this constraints is not severe in the content offering, it is strongly recommended to offer content follow ing this constraint.
- 15 If the MPD@type is equal to "static" and the MPD@profiles attribute includes
 16 "urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-on-demand:2011", then
- Each Representation shall have one Segment that complies with the Indexed Self Initializing Media Segment as defined in section 6.3.5.2 in ISO/IEC 23009-1.
- Time Codes expressing presentation and decode times shall be linearly increasing with increasing Segment number in one Representation. In order to minimize the frequency of time code wrap around 64 bit codes may be used or the timescale of the Representation may be chosen as small as possible. In order to support time code wrap around, a new Period may be added in the MPD added that initiates a new Period in order to express a discontinuity.

25 **3.2.4.** Presence of Attributes and Elements

- Elements and attributes are expected to be present for certain Adaptation Sets and Representationsto enable suitable initial selection and switching.
- 28 Specifically the following applies:
- For any Adaptation Sets with @contentType="video" the following attributes shall
 be present
- 31 o @maxWidth (or @width if all Representations have the same width)
- 32 o @maxHeight (or @height if all Representations have the same height)
- 33 o @maxFrameRate (or @frameRate if all Representations have the same
 34 frame rate)
- 35 o @par

| 1 2 3 | Note: The attributes <code>@maxWidth</code> and <code>@maxHeight</code> should be used such that they describe the target display size. This means that they may exceed the actual largest size of any coded Representation in one Adaptation Set. |
|----------------|--|
| 4 5 | For any Representation within an Adaptation Set with @contentType="video" the following attributes shall be present: |
| 6 | o @width, if not present in AdaptationSet element |
| 7 | o @height, if not present in AdaptationSet element |
| 8 | o @frameRate, if not present in AdaptationSet element |
| 9 | o @sar |
| 10 11 12 | Note: @width, @height, and @sar attributes should indicate the vertical and hori- zontal sample count of encoded and cropped video samples, not the intended display size in pixels. |
| 13 14 15 | • For Adaptation Set or for any Representation within an Adaptation Set with @con- tentType="video" the attribute @scanType shall either not be present or shall be set to "progressive". |
| 16 17 | • For any Adaptation Sets with value of the @contentType="audio" the following at- tributes shall be present |
| 18 | o @lang |
| 19 20 | • For any Representation within an Adaptation Set with value of the @con- tentType="audio" the following elements and attributes shall be present: |
| 21 | o @audioSamplingRate, if not present in AdaptationSet element |
| 22 23 | AudioChannelConfiguration, if not present in AdaptationSet ele- ment |
| 24 | 3.2.5. MPD Dimension Constraints |
| 25 26 | No constraints are defined on MPD size, or on the number of elements. However, it should be avoided to create unnecessary large MPDs. |
| 27 28 | Note: DVB DASH [38] adds MPD dimension constraints in section 4.5 of their specification. In order to conform to this specification, it is recommended to obey these constraints. |
| 29 | 3.2.6. Generic Metadata |
| 30 31 | Generic metadata may be added to MPDs based on DASH. For this purpose, the Essential Property Descriptor and the Supplemental Property Descriptor as defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4], clause |

- 32 5.8.4.7 and 5.8.4.8.
 33 Metadata identifiers for content properties are provided here: http://dashif.org/iden34 tifiers.
- However, it is not expected that DASH-IF clients support all metadata at
 http://dashif.org/identifiers unless explicitly required.

1 3.2.7. DASH Timing Model

2 3.2.7.1. General

According to ISO/IEC 23009-1, DASH defines different timelines. One of the key features in
DASH is that encoded versions of different media content components share a common timeline.
The presentation time of each access unit within the media content is mapped to the global common presentation timeline for synchronization of different media components and to enable seamless switching of different coded versions of the same media components. This timeline is referred
as Media Presentation timeline. The Media Segments themselves contain accurate Media Presentation timing information enabling synchronization of components and seamless switching.

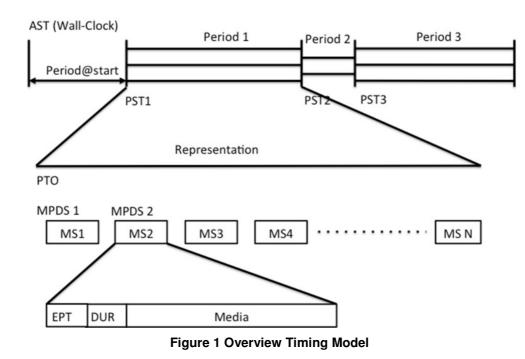
- 10 A second timeline is used to signal to clients the availability time of Segments at the specified
- 11 HTTP-URLs. These times are referred to as Segment availability times and are provided in wall-
- 12 clock time. Clients typically compare the wall-clock time to Segment availability times before
- 13 accessing the Segments at the specified HTTP-URLs in order to avoid erroneous HTTP request
- 14 responses. For static Media Presentations, the availability times of all Segments are identical. For
- 15 dynamic Media Presentations, the availability times of segments depend on the position of the
- 16 Segment in the Media Presentation timeline, i.e. the Segments get available over time.

Figure 1 provides an overview of the different timelines in DASH and their relation. The diagramshows three Periods, each of the Periods contains multiple Representations (for the discussion it is

- 19 irrelevant whether these are included in the same Adaptation Set or in different ones).
- 20 Specifically, the following information is available in the MPD that relates to timing:
- MPD@availabilityStartTime: the start time is the anchor for the MPD in wallclock time. The value is denoted as AST.
- Period@start: the start time of the Period relative to the MPD availability start time.
 The value is denoted as *PS*.
- Representation@presentationTimeOffset: the presentation time offset of the Representation in the Period, i.e. it provides the time of the presentation that is supposed to be rendered at the start of the Period. Note that typically this time is either earliest presentation time of the first segment or a value slightly larger in order to ensure synchronization.
 If larger, this Representation is presented with short delay with respect to the Period start.

30 In addition, with the use of the Representation@duration or Representation.Seg-

- 31 mentTimeline the MPD start time for each segment and the MPD duration for each segment 32 can be derived. For details refer to ISO/IEC 23009-1.
- According to Figure 1, the AST is a wall-clock time. It provides an anchor to all wall-clock time
 computation in the MPD. The sum of the Period@start of the first Period and the AST provides
- 35 the *PST1* value in wall-clock time of the first Period. Each Representation is assigned a presenta-36 tion time offset, either by the value of the attribute **Representation**@presentation-
- 37 TimeOffset or by default set to 0. The value of this attribute is denoted as PTO.





3 Within a Representation, each segment is assigned an MPD start time and MPD duration according

4 to ISO/IEC 23009-1. These two values can be computed from the MPD and provide approximate

5 times for each segment that are in particular useful for random access and seeking.

In addition, each segment has an internal sample-accurate presentation time. Therefore, each segment has a media internal earliest presentation time *EPT* and sample-accurate presentation duration *DUR*.

9 For each media segment in each Representation the MPD start time of the segment should approx-

10 imately be EPT - PTO. Specifically, the MPD start time shall be in the range of EPT - PTO -

11 0.5*DUR and EPT - PTO + 0.5*DUR according to the requirement stated above.

12 Each Period is treated independently. Details on processing at Period boundaries are provided in

13 ISO/IEC 23009-1. One example is, that for time code wrap-around a new Period is added, that

14 restarts at presentation time 0.

15 **3.2.7.2.** Static Media Presentations

For static media presentations, all Segments shall be available at time *AST*. This means that aDASH client may use the information in the MPD in order to seek to approximate times.

18 3.2.7.3. Dynamic Media Presentations

- 19 For dynamic media presentations, segments get available over time. The latest time they shall be
- 20 available is at the sum of *PST* (which is *AST* + **Period**@start), MPD start time and MPD 21 duration. The latter is added in order to take into account that at the server a segment typically
- 22 needs to be completed prior to its availability.

3.2.8. **Bandwidth and Minimum Buffer Time** 1

7

2 The MPD contains a pair of values for a bandwidth and buffering description, namely the Mini-3 mum Buffer Time (MBT) expressed by the value of MPD@minBufferTime and bandwidth (BW) 4 expressed by the value of **Representation**@bandwidth. The following holds:

- 5 the value of the minimum buffer time does not provide any instructions to the client on 6 how long to buffer the media. The value however describes how much buffer a client should have under *ideal* network conditions. As such, MBT is not describing the burstiness 8 or jitter in the network, it is describing the burstiness or jitter in the content encoding. To-9 gether with the BW value, it is a property of the content. Using the "leaky bucket" model, it is the size of the bucket that makes BW true, given the way the content is encoded. 10
- 11 The minimum buffer time provides information that for each Stream Access Point (and in 12 the case of DASH-IF therefore each start of the Media Segment), the property of the stream: 13 If the Representation (starting at any segment) is delivered over a constant bitrate channel 14 with bitrate equal to value of the BW attribute then each presentation time PT is available 15 at the client latest at time with a delay of at most PT + MBT.
- 16 In the absence of any other guidance, the MBT should be set to the maximum GOP size • 17 (coded video sequence) of the content, which quite often is identical to the maximum 18 segment duration for the live profile or the maximum subsegment duration for the On-19 Demand profile. The MBT may be set to a smaller value than maximum (sub)segment du-20 ration, but should not be set to a higher value.
- 21 In a simple and straightforward implementation, a DASH client decides downloading the next 22 segment based on the following status information:
- 23 the currently available buffer in the media pipeline, buffer
- 24 • the currently estimated download rate, rate
- 25 the value of the attribute <code>@minBufferTime</code>, *MBT* ٠
- 26 ٠ the set of values of the @bandwidth attribute for each Representation i, BW[i]
- 27 The task of the client is to select a suitable Representation *i*.
- 28 The relevant issue is that starting from a SAP on, the DASH client can continue to playout the
- 29 data. This means that at the current time it does have *buffer* data in the buffer. Based on this model
- 30 the client can download a Representation *i* for which $BW[i] \leq rate*buffer/MBT$ without emptying 31 the buffer.
- 32 Note that in this model, some idealizations typically do not hold in practice, such as constant bitrate 33 channel, progressive download and playout of Segments, no blocking and congestion of other
- HTTP requests, etc. Therefore, a DASH client should use these values with care to compensate 34
- 35 such practical circumstances; especially variations in download speed, latency, jitter, scheduling
- of requests of media components, as well as to address other practical circumstances. 36
- 37 One example is if the DASH client operates on Segment granularity. As in this case, not only parts 38 of the Segment (i.e., MBT) needs to be downloaded, but the entire Segment, and if the MBT is
- 39 smaller than the Segment duration, then rather the segment duration needs to be used instead of

1 the MBT for the required buffer size and the download scheduling, i.e. download a Representation

2 *i* for which $BW[i] \leq rate*buffer/max_segment_duration.$

3 **3.2.9.** Trick Mode Support

Trick Modes are used by DASH clients in order to support fast forward, seek, rewind and other operations in which typically the media, especially video, is displayed in a speed other than the normal playout speed. In order to support such operations, it is recommended that the content author adds Representations at lower frame rates in order to support faster playout with the same decoding and rendering capabilities.

9 However, Representations targeted for trick modes are typically not be suitable for regular playout.
10 If the content author wants to explicitly signal that a Representation is only suitable for trick mode
11 cases, but not for regular playout, it the following is recommended:

- add an Adaptation Set that that only contains trick modes Representations
- 13 annotate the Adaptation Set with an EssentialProperty descriptor or Supple-14 descriptor URI "http://dashif.org/guidementalProperty with 15 lines/trickmode" and the @value the value of @id attribute of the Adaptation Set to which these trick mode Representations belong. The trick mode Representations must 16 17 be time-aligned with the Representations in the main Adaptation Set. The value may also 18 be a white-space separated list of @id values. In this case the trick mode Adaptation Set is 19 associated to all Adaptation Sets with the values of the @id.
- signal the playout capabilities with the attribute @maxPlayoutRate for each Representation in order to indicate the accelerated playout that is enabled by the signaled codec profile and level.

If an Adaptation Set in annotated with the EssentialProperty descriptor with URI "http://dashif.org/guidelines/trickmode then the DASH client shall not select any of the contained Representations for regular playout.

26 **3.2.10.** Adaptation Set Constraints

27 3.2.10.1. Introduction

28 Content in one Adaptation Set is constrained to enable and simplify switching across different 29 Representations of the same source content. General Adaptation Set constraints allow sequencing 30 of Media Segments from different Representations ("bitrate switching") prior to a single audio or 31 video decoder, typically requiring the video decoder to be reset to new decoding parameters at the 32 switch point, such as a different encoded resolution or codec profile and level.

33 Bitstream Switching Adaptation Set constraints allow a switched sequence of Media Segments to

- be decoded without resetting the decoder at switch points because the resulting Segment stream is
- a valid track of the source type, so the decoder is not even aware of the switch. In order to signal
 that the Representations in an Adaptation Set are offered under these constraints, the attribute Ad–
- 37 aptationSet@bitstreamSwitching may be set to true. In the following general re-
- 38 quirements and recommendations are provided for content in an Adaptation Set in section 3.2.10.2
- 39 and specific requirements when the bitstream switching is set to true in section 3.2.10.3.

1 **3.2.10.2.** General

- 2 General Adaptation Set constraints require a client to process an Initialization Segment prior to the
- first Media Segment and prior to each Media Segment selected from a different Representation (a
 "bitrate switch").
- 5 Adaptation Sets shall contain Media Segments compatible with a single decoder that start with
- 6 SAP type 1 or 2, and in time aligned Representations using the same @timescale, when multiple
 7 Representations are present.
- 8 Edit lists in Initialization Segments intended to synchronize the presentation time of audio and9 video should be identical for all Representations in an Adaptation Set.
- Note: Re-initialization of decoders, decryptors, and display processors on some clients during
 bitrate switches may result in visible or audible artifacts. Other clients may evaluate the differences
- between Initialization Segments to minimize decoder reconfiguration and maintain seamlesspresentation equal to the encoded quality.
- 14 Additional and the checked quanty.
- Additional recommendations and constraints may apply for encryption and media coding. Fordetails, please check the relevant sections in this document, in particular section 6.2.5 and 7.5.4.

16 **3.2.10.3.** Bitstream Switching

- A bitstream switching Adaptation Set is optimized for seamless decoding, and live streams that may change encoding parameters over time. A bitstream switching Adaptation Set may process an Initialization Segment one time from the highest bandwidth Representation in the Adaptation Set, and then process Media Segments from any other Representation in the same Adaptation Set without processing another Initialization Segment. The resulting sequence of an Initialization Segment followed by time sequenced Media Segments results in a valid ISO BMFF file with an elementary stream similar to a transport stream.
- 24 For all Representations within an Adaptation Set with @bitstreamSwitching='true':
- 25

26

- the Track_ID shall be equal for all Representations
- Each movie fragment shall contain one track fragment
- Note: Multiple Adaptation Sets may be included in an MPD that contain different subsets of the
 available Representations that are optimized for different decoder and screen limitations. A Representation may be present in more than one Adaptation set, for example a 720p Representation
 that is present in a 720p Adaptation Set may also be present in a 1080p Adaptation Set. The 720p
 Representation uses the same Initialization Segments in each Adaptation Set, but the 1080p Adaptation Segment.
- Additional recommendation and constraints may apply for encryption and media coding. For de-tails, please see below.

36 **3.2.11. Media Time Information of Segment**

- 37 The earliest presentation time may be estimated from the MPD using the segment avail-
- ability start time minus the segment duration announced in the MPD.
- 39

1 The earliest presentation time may be accurately determined from the Segment itself. 2 3 If the Segment Index is present than this time is provided in the earliest_presenta-4 tion_time field of the Segment Index. To determine the presentation time in the Period, 5 the value of the attribute @presentationTimeOffset needs to be deducted. 6 7 If the Segment Index is not present, then the earliest presentation time is deduced from 8 the ISO BMFF parameters, namely the movie fragment header and possibly in combi-9 nation with the information in the Initialization Segment using the edit list. 10 The earliest presentation time in the Period for a Segment can be deduced from the de-11 12 code time taking also into account the composition time offset, edit lists as well as presen-13 tation time offsets. 14 15 Specifically the following is the case to determine the earliest presentation time assuming that no edit list is present in the Initialization Segment: 16 17 If the SAP type is 1, then the earliest presentation time is identical to the sum of the decode time and the composition offset of the first sample. The decode time 18 19 of the first sample is determined by the base media decode time of the movie 20 fragment. If the SAP type is 2, the first sample may not be the sample with the earliest 21 _ presentation time. In order to determine the sample with the earliest presentation 22 23 time, this sample is determined as the sample for which the sum of the decode 24 time and the composition offset is the smallest within this Segment. Then the ear-25 liest presentation time of the Segment is the sum of the base media decode time 26 and the sum of the decode time and the composition offset for *this sample*. Such 27 an example is shown below. 28 29 In addition, if the presentation time needs to be adjusted at the beginning of a period, then 30 the @presentationTimeOffset shall be used in order to set the presentation that is mapped to the start of the period. Content authoring shall be such that if edit lists are 31 32 ignored, then the client can operate without timing and lip sync issues. 33 34 In the following examples, there is a sequence of I, P, and B frames, each with a decoding 35 time delta of 10. The segmentation, presentation order and storage of the samples is shown in the table below. The samples are stored with the indicated values for their 36 37 decoding time deltas and composition time offsets (the actual CT and DT are given for 38 reference). The re-ordering occurs because the predicted P frames must be decoded 39 before the bi-directionally predicted B frames. The value of DT for a sample is always the 40 sum of the deltas of the preceding samples. Note that the total of the decoding deltas is 41 the duration of the media in this track. 42 43 Example with closed GOP and SAP Type = 1:

44

| Segment / | | | | ./ |
|-----------|--|--|--|----|
|-----------|--|--|--|----|

| | 11 | P4 | B2 | B3 | P7 | B5 | B6 | 18 | P11 | B9 | B10 | P14 | B12 | B13 |
|-----------------------------|----|------|------|------|-------|------|----|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Presentation Order | == | I1 B | 2 B3 | P4 E | 35 B6 | 6 P7 | == | 18 B9 | B10 | P11 | B12 | B13 | P14 | == |
| Base media de- code time | 0 | | | | | | | 70 | | | | | | |
| Decode delta | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 |
| DT | 0 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 |
| EPT | 10 | | | | | | | 80 | | | | | | |
| Composition time offset | 10 | 30 | 0 | 0 | 30 | 0 | 0 | 10 | 30 | 0 | 0 | 30 | 0 | 0 |
| СТ | 10 | 40 | 20 | 30 | 70 | 50 | 60 | 80 | 110 | 90 | 100 | 140 | 120 | 130 |

| Segment | / | | | | | \ | /- | | | | | \ |
|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|
| | 13 | P1 | P2 | P6 | B4 | B5 | 19 | P7 | P8 | P12 | B10 | B11 |
| Presentation == P1 P2 I3 B4 B5 P6 == P7 P8 I9 B10 B11 P12 == Order | | | | | | | | | | = | | |
| Base media de- code time | 0 | | | | | | 60 | | | | | |
| Decode Delta | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 |
| DT | 0 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 | 90 | 100 | 110 |
| EPT | 10 | I | | L | L | | 70 | L | | | L | |
| Composition time offset | 30 | 0 | 0 | 30 | 0 | 0 | 30 | 0 | 0 | 30 | 0 | 0 |
| СТ | 30 | 10 | 20 | 60 | 40 | 50 | 90 | 70 | 80 | 120 | 100 | 110 |

4 5 6

Example with closed GOP and SAP Type = 2 and negative composition offset:

| Segment | / | | | | | \ | /- | | | | | \ | |
|-----------------------------|----|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|--|
| | 13 | P1 | P2 | P6 | B4 | B5 | 19 | P7 | P8 | P12 | B10 | B11 | |
| Presentation Order | == | == P1 P2 I3 B4 B5 P6 == P7 P8 I9 B10 B11 P12 == | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Base media de- code time | 0 |) | | | | | | 60 | | | | | |
| Decode Delta | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | |
| DT | 0 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 | 90 | 100 | 110 | |
| EPT | 0 | | | • | | | 60 | | | | | | |

DASH-IF Interoperability Points v3.0

| Composition offset | 20 | -10 | -10 | 20 | -10 | -10 | 20 | -10 | -10 | 20 | -10 | -10 |
|-----------------------|----|-----|-----|----|-----|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| СТ | 20 | 0 | 10 | 50 | 30 | 40 | 80 | 60 | 70 | 110 | 90 | 100 |

For additional details refer to ISO/IEC 14496-12 [8] and ISO/IEC 23009-1 [1].

3 4

5 **3.2.12.** Content Offering with Periods

Content may be offered with a single Period. If content is offered with a single Period it is
suitable to set PSTART to zero, i.e. the initialization segments get available at START on
the server. However, other values for PSTART may be chosen.

- 9 Content with multiple Periods may be created for different reasons, for example:
- to enable splicing of content, for example for ad insertion,
- 11 to remove or add certain Representations in an Adaptation Set,
- 12 to remove or add certain Adaptation Sets,
- 13 for robustness reasons as documented in detail in section 4.8.

For details on content offering with multiple Periods, please refer to the requirements andrecommendations in section 4 and 5.

16 3.3. Client Implementation Requirements and Guidelines

17 **3.3.1. Overview**

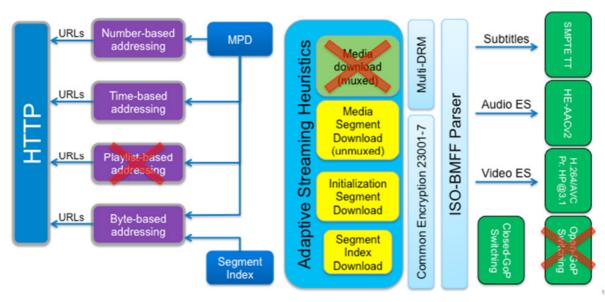
18 The DASH-related aspects of the interoperability point as defined in section 3.2 can also be un-19 derstood as permission for DASH clients that only implement the features required by the descrip-20 tion to process the Media Presentation (MPD document and Segments). The detailed DASH-re-21 lated client operations are not specified. Therefore, it is also unspecified how a DASH client ex-22 actly conforms. This document however provides guidelines on what is expected for conformance 23 to this interoperability point. A minimum set of requirements is collected in section 3.3.4.

24 3.3.2. DASH Client Guidelines

The DASH-related aspects in DASH-IF IOPs as well as for the ISO BMFF based On-Demand and
Live profiles of ISO/IEC 23009-1 are designed such that a client implementation can rely on relatively easy processes to provide an adaptive streaming service, namely:

- selection of the appropriate Adaptation Sets based on descriptors and other attributes
- initial selection of one Representation within each adaptation set
- download of (Sub)Segments at the appropriate time
- synchronization of different media components from different Adaptation Sets
- seamless switching of representations within one Adaptation Set

1



2

7

8

9

Figure 2 DASH aspects of a DASH-AVC/264 client compared to a client supporting the union of DASH ISO BMFF live and on-demand profile.

Figure 2 shows the DASH aspects of a DASH-AVC/264 client compared to a client supporting all
features of the DASH ISO BMFF Live and On-Demand profile. The main supported features are:

- support of HTTP GET and partial GET requests to download Segments and Subsegments
- three different addressing schemes: number and time-based templating as well as byte range based requests.
- support of metadata as provided in the MPD and Segment Index
- 11 download of Media Segments, Initialization Segments and Segment Index
- 12 ISO BMFF parsing
- synchronized presentation of media components from different Adaptation Sets
- switching of video streams at closed GOP boundaries

15 3.3.3. Seamless switching

16 The formats defined in section 3.2 are designed for providing good user experience even in case 17 the access bandwidth of the DASH Segment delivery or the cache varies. A key functionality is 18 the ability that the DASH client can seamlessly switch across different Representations of the same 19 media component. DASH clients should use the common timeline across different Representation 20 representing the same media component to present one Representation up to a certain time t and 21 continue presentation of another Representation from time t onwards. However, in practical im-22 plementations, this operation may be complex, as switching at time t may require parallel down-23 load and decoding of two Representations. Therefore, providing suitable switching opportunities 24 in regular time intervals simplifies client implementations.

The formats defined in section 3.2 provide suitable switching opportunities at (sub)segment bound aries.

3 3.3.4. DASH Client Requirements

In order to ensure a minimum level of interoperability, a DASH-IF conforming client shall at least
support the following features:

- The DASH client, if it switches, shall provide a seamless experience. A DASH shall be able to switch seamlessly at (sub)segment boundaries according to the definition in ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4], clause 4.5.1.
- If the scheme or the value for the following descriptor elements are not recognized and no equivalent other descriptor is present, the DASH client shall ignore the parent element:
 - o FramePacking
- 12 o Rating

6

7

8

11

33

- 13 EssentialDescriptor
- 14 o ContentProtection

15 3.4. Transport and Protocol-Related Issues

16 **3.4.1. General**

- Servers and clients operating in the context of the interoperability points defined in this documentshall support the normative parts of HTTP/1.1 as defined in RFC2616 [22].
- 19 Specific requirements and recommendations are provided below.

20 **3.4.2.** Server Requirements and Guidelines

- HTTP Servers serving segments should support suitable responses to byte range requests (partial GETs).
- 23 If an MPD is offered that contains Representations conforming to the ISO BMFF On-Demand
- profile, then the HTTP servers offering these Representations shall support suitable responses tobyte range requests (partial GETs).
- HTTP Servers may also support the syntax using Annex E of 23009-1 using the syntax of thesecond example in Annex E.3,
- 28 BaseURL@byteRange="\$base\$?\$query\$&range=\$first\$-\$last\$"

29 3.4.3. Client Requirements and Guidelines

- Clients shall support byte range requests, i.e. issue partial GETs to subsegments. Range requests
 may also be issued by using Annex E of 23009-1 using the syntax of the second example in Annex
 E.3,
 - **BaseURL**@byteRange="\$base\$?\$query\$&range=\$first\$-\$last\$"

Clients shall follow the reaction to HTTP status and error codes as defined in section A.7 ofISO/IEC 23009-1.

Clients should support the normative aspects of the HTTP state management mechanisms (also known as Cookies) as defined in RFC 6265 [37] for first-party cookies.

3 3.5. Synchronization Considerations

In order to properly access MPDs and Segments that are available on DASH servers, DASH servers
ers and clients should synchronize their clocks to a globally accurate time standard. Specifically it
is expected that the Segment Availability Times as computed from the MPD according to ISO/IEC
23009-1 [5], section 5.3.9.5 and additional details in ISO/IEC 23009-3 [7], section 6.4 are accurately announced in the MPD.

- 9 Options to obtain timing for a DASH client are for example:
- Usage of NTP or SNTP as defined in RFC5905 [36].
- The Date general-header field in the HTTP header (see RFC2616 [22], section 14.18) represents the date and time at which the message was originated, and may be used as an indication of the actual time.
- Anticipated inaccuracy of the timing source should be taken into account when requesting seg-ments close to their segment availability time boundaries.
- 16 More details on advanced synchronization support is provided in section 4.7.

17 **3.6. Considerations for Live Services**

18 For interoperability aspects of live services, please refer to section 4.

19 3.7. Considerations on Ad Insertion

20 For interoperability aspects for ad insertion use cases, please refer to section 5.

21 4. Live Services

22 4.1. Introduction

MPEG-DASH [1] provides several tools to support live services. This section primarily
 provides requirements and recommendations for both, content authoring as well as client
 implementations.

- 26 For this purpose, this section
- clarifies and refines details of interoperability points when used with the features
 available in the 2012 edition of MPEG-DASH with respect to different service con figurations and client implementations.
- defines one new interoperability point in order to address content authoring and client requirements to support a broad set of live services based on the features defined in the second edition (published 2014) of MPEG-DASH as well certain amendments thereof.
- 34 The main features and differences of these two modes are provided in the following table:

| Feature | Simple | Main |
|------------------------|--|---|
| Support of MPD@type | static, dynamic | static, dynamic |
| MPD updates | yes | yes |
| MPD updated triggered | by MPD attribute minimum update period | by Inband Event messages in the segments. |
| URL generation | based on MPD | based on MPD and segment in- formation |
| Timeline gaps | based on MPD and for entire content | may be signalled individually for each Representation |
| Segments starts with | closed GOP | closed GOP |
| Support of Simple Live | Yes | No |
| Support of Main Live | Yes | Yes |

To support the definition of the interoperability points, architectures and use cases were
 collected. These are documented in Annex X.

3 4.2. Overview Dynamic and Live Media Presentations

- DASH Media Presentations with MPD@type set to "dynamic" enable that media is made
 available over time and its availability may also be removed over time. This has two major
 effects, namely
- The content creator can announce a DASH Media Presentation for which not all content is yet available, but only gets available over time.
 - 2. Clients are forced into a timed schedule for the playout, such that they follow the schedule as desired by the content author.
- 11 Dynamic services may be used for different types of services:

9

10

- Dynamic Distribution of Available Content: Services, for which content is made available as dynamic content, but the content is entirely generated prior to distribution. In this case the details of the Media Presentation, especially the Segments (duration, URLs) are known and can be announced in a single MPD without MPD updates. This addresses use cases 2 and 3 in Annex B.
- MPD-controlled Live Service: Services for which the content is typically generated on the fly, and the MPD needs to be updated occasionally to reflect changes in the service offerings. For such a service, the DASH client operates solely on information in the MPD. This addresses the use cases 4 and 5 in Annex B.
- 3. MPD and Segment-controlled Live: Services for which the content is typically
 generated on the fly, and the MPD may need to be updated on short notice to re-

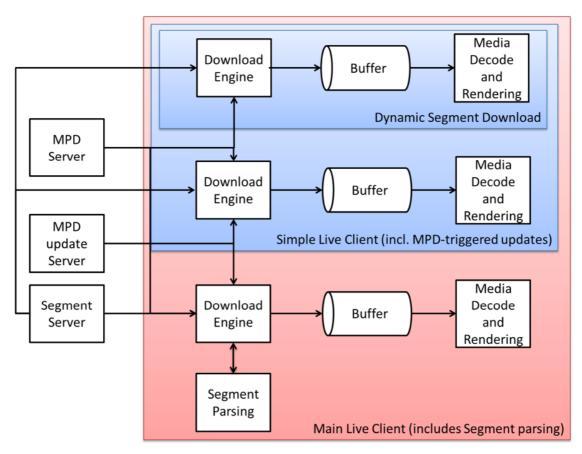
flect changes in the service offerings. For such a service, the DASH client oper ates on information in the MPD and is expected to parse segments to extract rel evant information for proper operation. This addresses the use cases 4 and 5,
 but also takes into account the advanced use cases.

5 Dynamic and Live services are typically controlled by different client transactions and 6 server-side signaling.

For initial access to the service and joining the service, an MPD is required. MPDs may be accessed at join time or may have been provided earlier, for example along with an Electronic Service Guide. The initial MPD or join MPD is accessed and processed by the client and the client having an accurate clock that is synchronized with the server can analyze the MPD and extract suitable information in order to initiate the service. This includes, but is not limited to:

- identifying the currently active Periods in the service and the Period that expresses
 the live edge (for more details see below)
- selecting the suitable media components by selecting one or multiple Adaptation
 Sets. Within each Adaptation Set selecting an appropriate Representation and
 identifying the live edge segment in each Representations. The client then issues
 requests for the Segments.

19 The MPD may be updated on the server based on certain rules and clients consuming 20 the service are expected to update MPDs based on certain triggers. The triggers may be 21 provided by the MPD itself or by information included in Segments. Depending on the 22 service offering, different client operations are required as shown in Figure 3.



- 1
- 2

4

5

6

Figure 3 Different Client Models

3 The basic functions a live clients describes in this document are as follows:

- 1. **Dynamic Segment Download:** This function creates a list of available Segments based on a single MPD and joins the service by downloading Segments at the live edge or may use the Segments that are available in the time shift buffer.
- 2. Simple Live Client: This client includes the dynamic segment download function and enables updates of the MPD based on information in the MPD in order to extend the Segment list at the live edge. MPDs are refetched and revalidated when the currently available MPD expires, i.e. an expired MPD can no longer be used for Segment URL generation.
- Main Live Client: This client includes all features of the simple Live DASH client.
 In addition it generates Segment URLs and it updates the MPD based on information in the Segments if the service offering provides this feature. MPDs are

- refetched and revalidated when the currently available MPD expires based on
 expiry information in the Segments.
- Requirements and recommendations for the dynamic segment download functions are
 defined in in section 4.3.
- 5 Requirements and recommendations for simple live service offerings and corresponding 6 clients are defined in section 4.4.
- 7 Requirements and recommendations for main live service offerings and corresponding8 clients are defined in section 4.5.
- 9 Requirements and recommendations when offering live services as on-demand are pro-10 vided in section 4.6.
- 11 Requirements and recommendations for client-server timing synchronization are de-
- 12 fined in section 4.7.
- 13 Requirements and recommendations for robust service offerings and corresponding cli-
- 14 ents are defined in section 4.8.
- 15 Interoperability Points are defined in section 4.9.

16 4.3. Dynamic Segment Download

17 **4.3.1. Background and Assumptions**

- 18 The dynamic segment download function is a key component of live services, In addition, 19 the dynamic segment download function may also be used for scheduling a playout. In 20 the remainder of this subsection, it is assumed that the client has access to a single in-21 stance of an MPD and all information of the entire Media Presentation is contained in the 22 MPD.
- We refer to this service as dynamic service as the main feature is that the Segments are
 made available over time following the schedule of the media timeline.
- Dynamic services are primarily documented in order to provide insight into the timing
 model of Segment availabilities. This forms the basis for live services and explains the key
 concepts and rules for Segment availabilities.

28 4.3.2. Preliminaries

29 4.3.2.1. MPD Information

- 30 If the Media Presentation is of type dynamic, then Segments have different Segment avail-
- ability times, i.e. the earliest time for which the service provider permits the DASH client
- to issue a request to the Segment and guarantees, under regular operation modes, that
- the client gets a 200 OK response for the Segment. The Segment availability times foreach Representation can be computed based on the information in an MPD.
- 35 For a dynamic service the MPD should at least contain information as available in Table
- 36 3. Information included there may be used to compute a list of announced Segments,
- 37 Segment Availability Times and URLs.

1 Assume that an MPD is available to the DASH client at a specific wall-clock time *NOW*. It

2 is assumed that the client and the DASH server providing the Segments are synchronized

3 to wall-clock, either through external means or through a specific client-server synchroni-

4 zation. Details on synchronization are discussed in section 4.7.

5 Assuming synchronization, the information in the MPD can then be used by the client at 6 time *NOW* to derive the availability (or non-availability) of Segments on the server.

7 8

| Table 3 Information related to Segment Information and Availability Times for a |
|---|
| dynamic service |

| MPD Information | Status | Comment |
|--|---|--|
| MPD @type | mandatory, set to "dynamic" | the type of the Media Presen- tation is dynamic, i.e. Seg- ments get available over time. |
| MPD @availabilityStartTime | mandatory | the start time is the anchor for the MPD in wall-clock time. The value is denoted as <i>AST</i> in the following. |
| MPD @mediaPresentationDuration | mandatory (for the considered use cases) | provides the duration of the Media Presentation. |
| MPD @suggestedPresentationDelay | optional, but recommended | suggested presentation delay as delta to segment availabil- ity start time. The value is denoted as <i>SPD</i> . Details on the setting and usage of the parameter is provided in the following. |
| MPD@minBufferTime | mandatory | minimum buffer time, used in conjunction with the @bandwidth attribute of each Representation. The value is denoted as <i>MBT</i> . De- tails on the setting and usage of the parameter is provided in the following. |
| MPD@timeShiftBufferDepth | optional, but recommended | time shift buffer depth of the media presentation. The value is denoted as <i>TSB</i> . De- tails on the setting and usage of the parameter is provided in the following. |
| Period @start | Mandatory for the first Period in the MPD | the start time of the Period relative to the MPD availa- bility start time. |

| SegmentTemplate@media | mandatory | The template for the Media Segment assigned to a Repre- sentation. |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| SegmentTemplate@startNumber | optional default | number of the first segment in the Period assigned to a Representation |
| SegmentTemplate@timescale | optional default | timescale for this Representa- tion. |
| SegmentTemplate@duration | exactly one of SegmentTem- plate@duration or Seg- | the duration of each Segment in units of a time. |
| SegmentTemplate.SegmentTime- line | mentTemplate.Seg- mentTimeline must be pre- sent per Representation. | in units of a time. |

1 4.3.2.2. Segment Information Derivation

2 4.3.2.2.1. Introduction

- Based on an MPD including information as documented in Table 3 and available at time
 NOW on the server, a synchronized DASH client derives the information of the list of Seg-
- 5 ments for each Representation in each Period. This section only describes the information 6 that is expressed by the values in the MPD. The generation of the information on the
- server and the usage of the information in the client is discussed in section 4.3.3 and 4.3.4,
 respectively.
- 9 MPD information is provided in subsection 4.3.2.2.3. The Period based information is doc-
- 10 umented in sub-section 4.3.2.2.4, and the Representation information is documented in
- 11 sub-section 4.3.2.2.5.

12 **4.3.2.2.2. Definitions**

17

18

- 13 The following definitions are relevant and aligned with ISO/IEC 23009-1:
- available Segment is a Segment that is accessible at its assigned HTTP-URL. This
 means that a request with an HTTP GET to the URL of the Segment results in a
 reply of the Segment and 2xx status code.
 - valid Segment URL is an HTTP-URL that is promised to reference a Segment during its Segment availability period.
- *NOW* is a time that is expressing the time on the content server as wall-clock time.
 All information in the MPD related to wall-clock is expressed as a reference to the time NOW.

22 **4.3.2.2.3.** MPD Information

- For a dynamic service without MPD updates, the following information shall be present and not present in the MPD (also please refer to Table 3):
- The MPD@type shall be set to "dynamic".
- The MPD@mediaPresentationDuration shall be present, or the Period@du ration of the last Period shall be present.

1 • The MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod shall not be present.

Furthermore, it is recommended to provide a value for MPD@timeShiftBufferDepth
 and MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay.

4 4.3.2.2.4. Period Information

9

22

23 24

25

26

27

28

29

5 Each Period is documented by a **Period** element in the MPD. An MPD may contain one 6 or more Periods. In order to document the use of multiple Periods, the sequence of Period 7 elements is expressed by an index *i* with *i* increasing by 1 for each new Period element.

- 8 Each regular Period *i* in the MPD is assigned a
 - Period start time *PSwc[i*] in wall-clock time,
- 10 Period end time *PEwc[i*], in wall-clock time.
- 11 Note: An MPD update may extend the Period end time of the last Period. For details refer to section 4.4.
- 12 The Period start time *PSwc*[*i*] for a regular Period *i* is determined according to section 13 5.3.2.1 of ISO/IEC 23009-1:
- If the attribute @start is present in the Period, then PSwc[i] is the sum of AST
 and the value of this attribute.
- If the @start attribute is absent, but the previous Period element contains a
 @duration attribute then the start time of the Period is the sum of the start time of
 the previous Period *PSwc[i]* and the value of the attribute @duration of the previous Period. Note that if both are present, then the @start of the new Period takes
 precedence over the information derived from the @duration attribute.
- 21 The Period end time *PEwc[i*] for a regular Period *i* is determined as follows:
 - If the Period is the last one in the MPD, the time *PEwc[i*] is obtained as
 - the sum of AST and Media Presentation Duration MPDur, with MPDur the value of MPD@mediaPresentationDuration if present, or the sum of PSwc[i] of the last Period and the value of Period@duration of the last Period.
 - else
 - the time *PEwc[i*] is obtained as the Period start time of the next Period, i.e. *PEwc[i*] = *PSwc[i*+1].

30 **4.3.2.2.5.** Representation Information

Based on such an MPD at a specific time *NOW*, a list of Segments contained in a Representation in a Period *i* with Period start time *PSwc[i*] and Period end time *PEwc[i*] can be computed.

34 If the SegmentTemplate.SegmentTimeline is present and the SegmentTem-35 plate@duration is not present, the SegmentTimeline element contains N_s s ele-36 ments indexed with s=1, ..., N_s , then let

- 37 *ts* the value of the @timescale attribute
- 38 *t*[*s*] be the value of @t of the *s*-th **s** element,

| 1 | d[s] be the value of @d of the s-th s element |
|--|--|
| 2 3 4 5 6 7 | r[s] be, if the @r value is greater than or equal to zero one more than the value of @r of the s-th s element. Note that if @r is smaller than the end of this segment timeline element, then this Representation contains gaps and no media is present for this gap. o else |
| 8 9 | if <i>t</i>[<i>s</i>+1] is present, then <i>r</i>[<i>s</i>] is the ceil of (<i>t</i>[<i>s</i>+1] - <i>t</i>[<i>s</i>])/<i>d</i>[<i>s</i>] else <i>r</i>[<i>s</i>] is the ceil of (<i>PEwc</i>[<i>i</i>] - <i>PSwc</i>[<i>i</i>] - <i>t</i>[<i>s</i>]/<i>ts</i>)*<i>ts</i>/<i>d</i>[<i>s</i>]) |
| 10 11 | If the SegmentTemplate@duration is present and the SegmentTemplate.Seg- mentTimeline is not present, then |
| 12 13 14 15 16 | N_s=1, ts the value of the @timescale attribute t[s] is 0, the d[s] is the value of @duration attribute r[s] is the ceil of (PEwc[i] - PSwc[i] - t[s]/ts)*ts/d[s]) |
| 17 | 4.3.2.2.6. Media Time Information of Segment |
| 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 | Each Media Segment at position $k=1,2,$ for each Representation has assigned an earliest media presentation time $EPT[k,r,i]$ and an accurate segment duration $SDUR[k,r,j]$, all measured in media presentation time. The earliest presentation time may be estimated from the MPD using the segment availability start time minus the segment duration announced in the MPD. The earliest presentation time may be accurately determined from the Segment itself. |
| 25 | For details on the derivation of the earliest presentation time, see section 3.2.11. |
| 26 27 | 4.3.2.2.7. Segment List Parameters For each Period <i>i</i> with Period start time <i>PSwc[i</i>] and Period end time <i>PEwc[i</i>] and each |
| 28 | Representation <i>r</i> in the Period the following information can be computed: |
| 29 | the presentation time offset described in the MPD, o[i,r] |
| 30 | the number of the first segment described in the MPD, k1[i,r] |
| 31 | the number of the last segment described in the MPD, k2[i,r] |
| 32 | segment availability start time of the initialization segment SAST[0,i,r] |
| 33 | segment availability end time of the initialization segment SAET[0,i,r] |
| 34 | segment availability start time of each media segment SAST[k,i,r], k=k1,, k2 |
| 35 | segment availability end time of each media segment SAET[k,i,r], k=k1,, k2 |
| 36 | segment duration of each media segment SD[k,i,r], k=k1,, k2 |
| 37 | the URL of each of the segments, URL[k,i,r] |
| | |

1 In addition,

2

3

- the latest available Period *i*[NOW] and the latest segment available at the server k[NOW] can be computed.
- the earliest available Period *i**[*NOW*] and the earliest segment available at the server k*[*NOW*] can be computed.

Based on the above information, for each Representation r in a Period i, the segment vailability start time SAST[k,i,r], the segment availability end time of each segment SAET[k,i,r], the segment duration of each segment SD[k,i,r], and the URL of each of the segments, URL[k,i,r] within one Period i be derived as follows using the URL Template function URLTemplate(ReplacementString, Address) as documented in subsection 4.3.2.2.8:

- 12 • *k*=0 13 SAST[0,i,r] = PSwc[i]• 14 • for *s*=1, ... *N*_s [*i*,*r*] 15 $\circ k = k + 1$ $\circ SAST[k,i,r] = PSwc[i] + (t[s,i,r] + c[s,i,r] - o[i,r])/ts$ 16 17 \circ SD[k,i,r] = d[s,i,r]/ts 18 \circ SAET[k,i,r] = SAST[k,i,r] + TSB + d[s,i,r]/ts 19 o if SegmentTemplate@media contains \$Number\$ 20 Address=@startNumber 21 URL[k,i,r] = URLTemplate (\$Number\$, Address) 22 else 23 Address = t[s, i, r]24 URL[k,i,r] = URLTemplate (\$Time\$, Address) 25 • for j = 1, ..., r[s, i, r]26 k = k + 127 SAST[k,i,r] = SAST[k-1,i,r] + d[s,i,r]/ts28 SAET[k,i,r] = SAST[k,i,r] + TSB + d[s,i,r] / ts29 SD[k,i,r] = d[s,i,r] / ts30 if SegmentTemplate@media contains \$Number\$ 31 Address = Address + 132 URL[k,i,r] = URLTemplate (\$Number\$, Address) 33 else 34 Address = Address + d[s,i,r]35 URL[k,i,r] = URLTemplate (\$Time\$, Address) 36 k2[i,r] = k37 SAET[0,i,r] = SAET[k2[i,r],i,r]38 Note that not all segments documented above may necessarily be accessible at time *NOW*, but only those that are within the segment availability time window. 39
- Hence, the number of the first media segment described in the MPD for this Period, k1[i,r], is the smallest k=1, 2, ... for which $SAST[k,i,r] \ge NOW$.

1 The latest available Period *i*[*NOW*] is the Period *i* with the largest *PEwc*[*i*] and *PEwc*[*i*] is 2 smaller than or equal to *NOW*.

The latest available segment k[NOW] available for a Representation of Period i[NOW] is the segment with the largest k=0,1,2,... such that SAST[k,i,r] is smaller than or equal to *NOW*. Note that this contains the Initialization Segment with k=0 as not necessarily any media segment may yet be available for Period i[NOW]. In this case, last media segment k2[i[NOW]-1,r], i.e., the last media segment of the previous Period is the latest accessible media Segment.

9 4.3.2.2.8. URL Generation with Segment Template

10 The function URL Template function URLTemplate(ReplacementString, Address)

11 generates a URL. For details refer to ISO/IEC 23009-1 [1], section 5.3.9.4. Once the Seg-

ment is generated, processing of the Base URLs that apply on this segment level is done

13 as defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1, section 5.6.

14 4.3.2.2.9. Synchronized Playout and Seamless Switching

In order to achieve synchronized playout across different Representations, typically from different Adaptation Sets, the different Representations are synchronized according to the presentation time in the Period. Specifically, the earliest presentation time of each Segment according to section 4.3.2.2.6 determines the playout of the Segment in the Period and therefore enables synchronized playout of different media components as well as seamless switching within one media component.

21 **4.3.3.** Service Offering Requirements and Guidelines

22 4.3.3.1. General Service Offering Requirements

32

33

34

35

For dynamic service offerings, the MPD shall conform to DASH-IF IOP as defined in section 3 and shall at least contain the mandatory information as documented in Table 3.

- 25 If such an MPD is accessible at time *NOW* at the location MPD.Location, then
- all Segments for all Representations in all Periods as announced in an MPD shall
 be available latest at the announced segment availability start time SAST[k,i,r] at
 all URL[k,i,r] as derived in section 4.3.2.2;
- all Segments for all Representations in all Periods as announced in an MPD shall
 at least be available until the announced segment availability end time
 SAET[k,i,r] at all URL[k,i,r] as derived in section 4.3.2.2;
 - for all Media Segments for all Representations in all Periods as announced in an MPD the Segment in this Period is available prior to the sum of Period start, earliest presentation time and segment duration, i.e. SAST[k,i,r] <= PSwc[i] + SD[k,r,i] + EPT[k,r,i];
- if a Media Segments with segment number k is delivered over a constant bitrate channel with bitrate equal to value of the @bandwidth attribute then each presentation time PT is available at the client latest at time with a delay of at most PT + MBT.

1 4.3.3.2. Dynamic Service Offering Guidelines

2 **4.3.3.2.1**. Introduction

In order to offer a simple dynamic service for which the following details are known inadvance,

- start at wall-clock time START,
 - exact duration of media presentation PDURATION,
- 7 location of the segments for each Representation at " http://exam-8 ple.com/\$RepresentationID\$/\$Number\$",
- 9 a service provide may offer an MPD as follows:
- 10

5

6

Table 4 – Basic Service Offering

| MPD Information | Value |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| MPD @type | dynamic |
| MPD@availabilityStartTime | START |
| MPD @mediaPresentationDuration | PDURATION |
| MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay | SPD |
| MPD@minBufferTime | MBT |
| MPD@timeShiftBufferDepth | TSB |
| MPD.BaseURL | "http://example.com/" |
| Period @start | PSTART |
| Representation@bandwidth | BW |
| SegmentTemplate@media | "\$RepresentationID\$/\$Num- |
| | ber\$" |
| SegmentTemplate@startNumber | 1 |
| SegmentTemplate@duration | SDURATION |

11 Note that the setting of capitalized parameters is discussed in section 4.3.3.2.2.

- 12 According to the work-flow shown in Annex B:
- the MPD is generated and published prior to time START such that DASH clients may access it prior to the start of the Media Presentation.
- 15 no redundant tools are considered.
- the encoder and the segmenter generate segments of duration SDURATION and
 publish those on the origin server, such that they are available at URL[k] latest at
 their announced segment availability start time SAST[k].
- 19 Based on the details in section 4.3.2.2, the Segment Information is derived as:
- 20 k1 = 1

23

24

- 21 k2 = ceil(PDURATION/SDURATION)
- for k = 1, ..., k2
 - SAST[k] = START + PSTART + k*SDURATION
 - o SAET[k] = SAST[k] + TSB + SDURATION

| 1 | • $SD[k] = SDURATION$ |
|----|--|
| 2 | <pre>o URL[k] = http://example.com/\$RepresentationID\$/k</pre> |
| 3 | The segment availability times of the Initialization Segment are as follows: |
| 4 | SAST[0] = START + PSTART |
| 5 | SAET[0] = SAET[k2] |
| 6 | 4.3.3.2.2. Basic Parameter Settings |
| 7 | In the following recommendations are provided for the |
| 8 | • Time Shift Buffer Depth (TSB): |
| 9 | • If the content should be consumed at the live edge, then the time shift buffer |
| 10 | depth should be set short. However, the TSB should not be smaller than the |
| 11 | recommended value of 4*SDURATION and 6 seconds in media time in order |
| 12 | for the client to do some prebuffering in more difficult network conditions. |
| 13 | • If no restrictions on the accessibility of the content are provided, then the |
| 14 | TSB may be set to a large value that even exceeds PDURATION. |
| 15 | Suggested Presentation Delay (SPD) |
| 16 | If synchronized play-out with other devices adhering to the same rule is de- |
| 17 | sired and/or the service provider wants to define the typical live edge of the |
| 18 | program, then this value should be provided. The service provider should |
| 19 | set the value taking into account at least the following: |
| 20 | the desired end-to-end latency |
| 21 | • the typical required buffering in the client, for example based on the |
| 22 | network condition |
| 23 | the segment duration SDURATION |
| 24 | the time shift buffer depth TSB |
| 25 | • A reasonable value may be 2 to 4 times of the segment duration SDURA- |
| 26 | TION, but the time should not be smaller than 4 seconds in order for the |
| 27 | client to maintain some buffering. |
| 28 | • Segment Duration (SDURATION) |
| 29 | • The segment duration typically influences the end-to-end latency, but also |
| 30 | the switching and random access granularity as in DASH-264/AVC each |
| 31 | segment starts with a stream access point which can also be used as s |
| 32 | switch point. The service provider should set the value taking into account |
| 33 | at least the following: |
| 34 | the desired end-to-end latency |
| 35 | the desired compression efficiency |
| 36 | the start-up latency |
| 37 | the desired switching granularity |
| 38 | the desired amount of HTTP requests per second |
| 39 | the variability of the expected network conditions |
| 40 | • Reasonable values for segment durations are between 1 second and 10 |
| 41 | seconds. |
| 42 | Minimum Buffer Time (MBT) and bandwidth (BW) |

| $\begin{array}{c}1\\2\\3\\4\\5\\6\\7\\8\\9\\10\\11\\12\\13\\14\\15\\16\\17\\18\\19\end{array}$ | the value of the minimum buffer time does not provide any instructions to the client on how long to buffer the media. This aspect is covered in 4.3.4.4. The value describes how much buffer a client should have under <i>ideal</i> network conditions. As such, MBT is not describing the burstiness or jitter in the network, it is describing the burstiness or jitter in the content encoding. Together with the BW value, it is a property of the content. Using the "leaky bucket" model, it is the size of the bucket that makes BW true, given the way the content is encoded. The minimum buffer time provides information that for each Stream Access Point (and in the case of DASH-IF therefore each start of the Media Segment), the property of the stream: If the Representation (starting at any segment) is delivered over a constant bitrate channel with bitrate equal to value of the BW attribute then each presentation time <i>PT</i> is available at the client latest at time with a delay of at most <i>PT</i> + <i>MBT</i>. In the absence of any other guidance, the MBT should be set to the maximum GOP size (coded video sequence) of the content, which quite often is identical to the maximum segment duration, but should not be set to a higher value. |
|--|---|
| 20 21 | In a simple and straightforward implementation, a DASH client decides downloading the next segment based on the following status information: |
| 22 23 24 25 | the currently available buffer in the media pipeline, <i>buffer</i> the currently estimated download rate, <i>rate</i> the value of the attribute @minBufferTime, <i>MBT</i> the set of values of the @bandwidth attribute for each Representation i, <i>BW</i>[<i>i</i>] |
| 26 | The task of the client is to select a suitable Representation <i>i</i> . |
| 27 28 29 30 | The relevant issue is that starting from a SAP on, the DASH client can continue to playout the data. This means that at the current time it does have <i>buffer</i> data in the buffer. Based on this model the client can download a Representation <i>i</i> for which $BW[i] \leq rate*buffer/MBT$ without emptying the buffer. |
| 31 32 33 34 35 36 | Note that in this model, some idealizations typically do not hold in practice, such as con- stant bitrate channel, progressive download and playout of Segments, no blocking and congestion of other HTTP requests, etc. Therefore, a DASH client should use these val- ues with care to compensate such practical circumstances; especially variations in down- load speed, latency, jitter, scheduling of requests of media components, as well as to address other practical circumstances. |
| 37 38 39 | One example is if the DASH client operates on Segment granularity. As in this case, not only parts of the Segment (i.e., MBT) needs to be downloaded, but the entire Segment, and if the MBT is smaller than the Segment duration, then rather the segment duration |

- and if the MBT is smaller than the Segment duration, then rather the segment duration needs to be used instead of the MBT for the required buffer size and the download sched-
- 41 uling, i.e. download a Representation *i* for which $BW[i] \leq rate*buffer/max_segment_dura-$
- 42 tion.

For low latency cases, the above parameters may be different. 1

2 4.3.3.2.3. Example

- 3 Assume a simple example according to Table 7.
- 4

Table 5 – Basic Service Offering

| MPD Information | Value |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| MPD @type | dynamic |
| MPD@availabilityStartTime | START |
| MPD @mediaPresentationDuration | 43sec |
| MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay | 15sec |
| MPD@minBufferTime | 5sec |
| MPD@timeShiftBufferDepth | 25sec |
| MPD.BaseURL | "http://example.com/" |
| Period @start | 0 |
| SegmentTemplate@media | "\$RepresentationID\$/\$Num- |
| | ber\$" |
| SegmentTemplate@startNumber | 1 |
| SegmentTemplate@duration | 5sec |

- 5 Based on the derivation in section 4.3.3.2.1, the following holds:
- 6 • k1 = 1, k2 = 9
- 7 • for k = 1, ..., k2

• SAST[k] = START + k*5sec

- SAET[k] = SAST[k] + 30sec
- 9 10 11

13

8

o URL[k] = http://example.com/1/k

- The segment availability times of the Initialization Segment are as follows:
- SAST[0] = START 12
 - SAET[0] = START + 75 sec
- Figure 4 shows the availability of segments on the server for different times NOW. In par-14
- 15 ticular, before START no segment is available, but the segment URLs are valid. With time NOW advancing, segments get available. 16



Figure 4 Segment Availability on the Server for different time NOW (blue = valid but
 not yet available segment, green = available Segment, red = unavailable Segment)

4 4.3.3.3. Content Offering with Periods

5 4.3.3.3.1. General

For content offered within a Period, and especially when offered in multiple Periods, then
the content provider should offer the content such that actual media presentation time is
as close as possible to the actual Period duration. It is recommended that the Period duration is the maximum of the presentation duration of all Representations contained in the
Period.

- 11 A typical Multi-Period Offering is shown in Table 6. This may for example represent a
- service offering where main content provided in Period 1 and Period 3 are interrupted by
 an inserted Period 2.
- 14

1

Table 6 Multi-Period Service Offering

| MPD Information | Value |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| MPD @type | dynamic |
| MPD @availabilityStartTime | START |
| MPD@mediaPresentationDuration | PDURATION |
| MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay | SPD |
| MPD@minBufferTime | MBT |
| MPD @timeShiftBufferDepth | TSB |
| MPD.BaseURL | "http://example.com/" |
| Period @start | PSTART |
| <pre>SegmentTemplate@media</pre> | "1/\$RepresentationID\$/\$Number\$" |

| SegmentTemplate@startNumber | 1 |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| SegmentTemplate@duration | SDURATION1 |
| Period @start | PSTART2 |
| SegmentTemplate@media | "2/\$RepresentationID\$/\$Number\$" |
| SegmentTemplate@startNumber | 1 |
| SegmentTemplate@duration | SDURATION2 |
| Period @start | PSTART3 |
| SegmentTemplate@media | "1/\$RepresentationID\$/\$Number\$" |
| SegmentTemplate@startNumber | STARTNUMBER2 |
| SegmentTemplate@duration | SDURATION1 |
| SegmentTemplate@presenta- | РТО |
| tionTimeOffset | |

1 The work flow for such a service offering is expected to be similar to the one in section 4.3.2.2.1.

3 Based on the details in section 4.3.2.2, the Segment Information is derived as:

| 4 | Period 1 |
|----|--|
| 5 | o PSwc[1] = START + PSTART |
| 6 | • PEwc[1] = START + PSTART2 |
| 7 | \circ k1 = 1 |
| 8 | <pre>o k2 = ceil((PSTART2-PSTART1)/SDURATION)</pre> |
| 9 | ○ for k = 1,, k2 |
| 10 | SAST[k] = PSwc[1] + k*SDURATION |
| 11 | SAET[k] = SAST[k] + TSB + SDURATION |
| 12 | SD[k] = SDURATION |
| 13 | URL[k] = http://example.com/1/\$RepresentationID\$/k |
| 14 | SAST[0] = PSwc[1] |
| 15 | SAET[0] = SAET[k2] |
| 16 | Period 2 |
| 17 | <pre>o PSwc[2] = START + PSTART2</pre> |
| 18 | <pre>o PEwc[2] = START + PSTART3</pre> |
| 19 | ○ k1 = 1 |
| 20 | <pre>o k2 = ceil((PSTART3-PSTART2)/SDURATION2)</pre> |
| 21 | o for k = 1,, k2 |
| 22 | SAST[k] = PSwc[2] + k*SDURATION2 |
| 23 | SAET[k] = SAST[k] + TSB + SDURATION2 |
| 24 | SD[k] = SDURATION2 |
| 25 | URL[k] = http://example.com/2/\$RepresentationID\$/k |
| 26 | SAST[0] = PSwc[2] |
| 27 | SAET[0] = SAET[k2] |
| 28 | Period 3 |
| 29 | <pre>o PSwc[3] = START + PSTART3</pre> |
| 30 | <pre>o PEwc[3] = START + PDURATION</pre> |
| 31 | ○ k1 = 1 |
| | |

| 1 | <pre>o k2 = ceil((PSTART3-PDURATION)/SDURATION1)</pre> |
|---|--|
| 2 | ○ for k = 1,, k2 |
| 3 | SAST[k] = PSwc[3] + k*SDURATION1 |
| 4 | SAET[k] = SAST[k] + TSB + SDURATION1 |
| 5 | SD[k] = SDURATION1 |
| 6 | URL[k] = "http://example.com/1/\$Representa- |
| 7 | tionID\$/(k+STARTNUMBER2-1)" |
| 8 | o SAST[0] = PSwc[3] |
| 9 | \circ SAET[0] = SAET[k2] |

10 Note that the number *k* describes position in the Period. The actual number used in the 11 segment template increased by the one less than the actual start number.

12 4.3.3.3.2. Continuous Period Offering

Note: This is aligned with Amd.3 of ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 [5] and may be referenced in a future version of this document.

In certain circumstances the Content Provider offers content in the next Period that is a continuation of the content in the previous Period, possibly in the immediately following Period or in a later Period. The latter case applies for example after an advertisement Period had been inserted. The content provider may express that the media components contained in two Adaptation Sets in two different Periods are *associated* by assigning equivalent Asset Identifiers to both Periods and by identifying both Adaptation Sets with identical value for the attribute <code>@id</code>.

If Adaptation Sets in two different Periods are *associated*, then the Adaptation Set parameters defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1, section 5.3.3.1, must be identical for the two Adaptation
Sets.

Furthermore, two Adaptation Sets in one MPD are *period-continuous* if all of the followingholds:

• The Adaptation Sets are associated.

30 31

- The @presentationTimeOffset is present or can be inferred as 0 for all Representations in both Adaptation Sets.
 - Within one Adaptation Set, the value of <code>@presentationTimeOffset</code> is identical for all Representations.
- The sum of the value of the @presentationTimeOffset and the presentation
 duration of all Representations in one Adaptation Set are identical to the value of
 the @presentationTimeOffset of the other Adaptation Set.
- If Representations in both Adaptation Sets have the same value for @id, then
 they shall have functionally equivalent Initialization Segments, i.e. the Initialization
 Segment may be used to continue the play-out the Representation.

Content authors should signal *period-continuous* Adaptation Sets by signalling the presentation duration. The *presentation duration* of a Representation is the difference between the end presentation time of the Representation and the earliest presentation time of the Representation. The presentation time duration has the same unit as presentation time 1 offset, i.e. @timescale, and expresses the exact presentation duration of the Represen-2 tation.

- 3 The presentation duration may be signalled by
- 4 A supplemental descriptor with @scheme_id_URI set to "urn:mpeg:dash:pe-
- riod_continuity:2014" may be provided for an Adaptation Set with
 o the @value of the descriptor, PID, matching the value of an @id of a Pe
 - riod that is contained in the MPD,
- 7 8

9

10

- the value of the AdaptationSet@id being AID,
- the value of the @presentationTimeOffset for this Adaptation Set is provided and is PTO.

If this signal is present, then for the Period with the value of the Period@id being PID and for the Adaptation Set with AdaptationSet@id being AID, the presentation duration of each Representation in this Adaptation Set is obtained as the difference of PTO minus

14 the value of the <code>@presentationTimeOffset</code>.

15 Content authors should offer an MPD with *period-continuous* Adaptation Sets if the MPD16 contains Periods with identical Asset Identifiers.

- 17 4.3.3.4. Content Offering with Segment Timeline
- 18 4.3.3.4.1. Basic Operation
- 19 In order to offer a dynamic service that takes into account
- variable segment durations
- gaps in the segment timeline of one Representation,
- the Segment timeline as defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1, section 5.3.9.6 may be used as an
 alternative to the @duration attribute as shown in section 4.3.3.2.
- 24

| Table 7 – Service | Offering with | Segment | Timeline |
|-------------------|---------------|---------|----------|
|-------------------|---------------|---------|----------|

| MPD Information | Value |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| MPD @type | dynamic |
| MPD@availabilityStartTime | START |
| MPD @mediaPresentationDuration | PDURATION |
| MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay | SPD |
| MPD@minBufferTime | MBT |
| MPD@timeShiftBufferDepth | TSB |
| MPD.BaseURL | "http://example.com/" |
| Period @start | PSTART |
| SegmentTemplate@media | "\$RepresentationID\$/\$Num- |
| | ber\$" |
| SegmentTemplate@startNumber | 1 |
| SegmentTemplate.SegmentTime- line | t[i], n[i], d[i], r[i] |

1 According to the work-flow shown in Annex B:

- the MPD is generated and published prior to time START such that DASH clients may access it prior to the start of the Media Presentation.
- no redundant tools are considered.

2

3

the encoder and the segmenter generally should generate segments of constant duration SDURATION and publish those on the origin server, such that they are available at URL[*k*] latest at their announced segment availability start time SAST[*k*]. However, the server may offer occasional shorter segments for encoding optimizations, e.g. at scene changes, or segment gaps (for details see section 6). If such an irregular segment is published the MPD needs to document this by a new s element in the segment timeline.

12 If the segment timeline is used and the \$Time\$ template is used, then the times in the13 MPD shall accurately present media internal presentation times.

14 If the segment timeline is and the \$Number\$ template is used, then the MPD times shall
15 at most deviate from the earliest presentation time documented in the MPD by 0.5sec.

16 Based on these considerations, it is not feasible to operate with a single MPD if the content

is not yet known in advance. However, pre-prepared content based on the segment time-line may be offered in a dynamic fashion. The use of the Segment Timeline is most suita-

19 ble for the case where the MPD can be updated. For details refer to section 4.4.

20 **4.3.3.4.2.** Basic Parameter Settings

The parameters for TSB and SPD should be set according to section 4.3.3.2.2. The segment duration SDURATION may be set according to section 4.3.3.2.2, but it should be considered that the service provider can offer shorter segments occasionally.

24 4.3.3.5. Joining Recommendation

By default, an MPD with MPD@type="dynamic" suggests that the client would want to join the stream at the live edge, therefore to download the latest available segment (or close to, depending on the buffering model), and then start playing from that segment onwards.

However there are circumstances where a dynamic MPD might be used with content intended for playback from the start, or from another position. For example, when a content provider offers 'start again' functionality for a live program, the intention is to make the content available as an on-demand program, but not all the segments will be available immediately.

34 This may be signalled to the DASH client by including an MPD Anchor, with either

- 35 the t parameter, or
- both the period and t parameter, in the MPD URL provided to the DASH client,
 or
- the utc parameter, for details refer to Amd.3 of ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 [5].

1 The format and behaviour of MPD Anchors is defined in section C.4 of ISO/IEC 23009-1.

2 Specifically the utc parameter is defined in Amd.3 of ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 [5].

For example to start from the beginning of the MPD the following would be added to theend of the MPD URL provided to the DASH client:

5 #t=0

Or to start from somewhere other than the start, in this case 50 minutes from the beginning
of the period with Period ID "program_part_2":

```
#period=program_part_2&t=50:00
```

9 Notes:

8

- as per section C.4 of ISO/IEC 23009-1 the time indicated using the t parameter is as per the field definition of the W3C Media Fragments Recommendation v1.0 section 4.2.1.
- the period ID has to be URL encoded/decoded as necessary and needs to match one of the Period@id fields in the MPD.

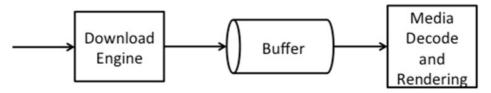
Where an MPD Anchor is used it should refer to a time for which segments are currentlyavailable in the MPD.

17 4.3.4. Client Operation, Requirements and Guidelines

18 4.3.4.1. Basic Operation for Single Period

19 A DASH client is guided by the information provided in the MPD. A simple client model is

20 shown in Figure 5.



21 22

Figure 5 Simple Client Model

Assume that the client has access to an MPD and the MPD contains the parameters in Table 3, i.e. it consumes a dynamic service with fixed media presentation duration.

In addition in the following for simplicity it is assumed that the MPD only contains a single
 Period with period start time *PSwc*[*i*] and the MPD-URL does not include any fragment
 parameters according to section 4.3.3.5.

The following example client behaviour may provide a continuous streaming experienceto the user:

The client parses the MPD, selects a collection of Adaptation Sets suitable for its
 environment based on information provided in each of the AdaptationSet ele ments.

2) Within each Adaptation Set it selects one Representation, typically based on the value of the <code>@bandwidth</code> attribute, but also taking into account client decoding and rendering capabilities.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12 13

14

15

- 3) The client creates a list of accessible Segments at least for each selected Representation taking into account the information in the MPD as documented in Table 3 and the current time *JOIN* in the client and in particular the segment closest to the live edge referred to the *live edge segment*. For details refer to section 4.3.4.2.
- 4) The client downloads the initialization segment of the selected Representations and then accesses the content by requesting entire Segments or byte ranges of Segments. Typically at any time download the next segment at the larger of the two: (i) completion of download of current segment or (ii) the Segment Availability Start Time of the next segment. Based on the buffer fullness and other criteria, rate adaptation is considered. Typically the first media segment that is downloaded is the *live edge segment*, but other decisions may be taken in order to minimize startup latency. For details on initial buffering, refer to section 4.3.4.4.
- 5) According to Figure 5 media is fed into buffer and at some point in time, the decoding and rendering of the media is kicked off. The downloading and presentation is done for the selected Representation of each selected Adaptation. The synchronization is done using the presentation time in the Period as documented in section 4.3.2.2.9. For synchronized playout, the exact presentation times in the media shall be used.
- 22 Once presentation has started, the playout process is continuous. The playout pro-23 cess expects media to be present in the buffer continuously. If the MPD@suggest-24 edPresentationDelay is present, then this value may be used as the presen-25 tation delay PD. If the MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay is not present, but 26 the client is expected to consume the service at the live edge, then a suitable 27 presentation delay should be selected, typically between the value of @min-28 BufferTime and the value of @timeShiftBufferDepth. It is recommended 29 that the client starts rendering the first sample of the downloaded media segment k with earliest presentation time EPT(k) at PSwc[i] + (EPT(k) - o[r,i]) + PD. For 30 31 details on selecting and minimizing end-to-end latency as well as the start-up la-32 tency, see section 4.3.4.4.
- 6) The client may request Media Segments of the selected Representations by using
 the generated Segment list during the availability time window.

- 1 7) Once the presentation has started, the client continues consuming the media con-2 tent by continuously requesting Media Segments or parts of Media Segments and 3 playing content that according to the media presentation timeline. The client may switch Representations taking into updated information from its environment, e.g. 4 5 change of observed throughput. In a straight-forward implementation, with any re-6 quest for a Media Segment starting with a stream access point, the client may 7 switch to a different Representation. If switching at a stream access point, the client shall switch seamlessly at such a stream access point. 8 9
 - 8) With the wall-clock time *NOW* advancing, the client consumes the available Segments. As *NOW* advances the client possibly expands the list of *available* Segments for each Representation in the Period according to the procedures specified in 4.3.4.2.
- 9) Once the client is consuming media contained in the Segments towards the end of the announced media in the Representation, then either the Media Presentation is terminated, a new Period is started (see subsection 4.3.4.3) or the MPD needs to be refetched. For details on MPD updates and refetching, please refer to section 4.4.

18 4.3.4.2. Determining the Segment List

For a single Period content the client determines the available Segment List at time NOWaccording to section 4.3.2.2.7 taking into account the simplified offering in Table 4 as

21 ● k1 = 1

10

11

12

- 22 k2 = ceil (PDURATION/SDURATION)
- SAST[k] = START + PSTART + k*SDURATION for k = 0, 1, ..., k2
- SAET[k] = SAST[k] + TSB + SDURATION for k = 1, ..., k2
- 25 SAET[0] = SAET[k2]
- 26 SD[k] = SDURATION
- URL[k] = http://example.com/\$RepresentationID\$/k
- 28 k[NOW] = MIN(floor ((NOW START PSTART)/SDURATION), k2)
- Note that if k[*NOW*] is *0*, then only the Initialization Segment is available.

31 4.3.4.3. Multi-Period Content

In an extension to the description in section 4.3.4.1 assume now that the client has access to an MPD and the MPD contains content with multiple Periods, for example following the parameters in Table 6. The start time of each Period is computed as period start time *PSwc*[*i*]. and the MPD-URL does not include any fragment parameters according to section 4.3.3.5.

- 37 In an extension of bullet 3 in section 4.3.4.1,
- the client creates a list of accessible Segments at least for each selected Repre-
- sentation taking into account the information in the MPD as documented in Table
 3 and the current time *NOW* in the client and in particular the segment closest to
- 41 the live edge referred to the *live edge segment*.

| 1 2 | For this it needs to take into account the latest Period <i>i</i> [NOW]. The latest Period and the latest segment are obtained as follows with i* the index of the last Period.: |
|--|---|
| 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 | if NOW <= PSwc[1] no segment is yet available else if NOW > PSwc[i*] the last one and the latest segment is available is k2[i*] else if NOW > PSwc[i*] + TSB no segment is available any more else if PSwc[1] < NOW <= PEwc[i*] i' the such that PSwc[i] < NOW <= PEwc[i'] k[NOW] = MIN(floor ((NOW - PEwc[i'] - PSwc[i'])/SDURA-TION[i']), k2) |
| 13 14 15 | Note again that if that if k[NOW] is 0, then only the Initialization Segment is available. If the Period is not the first one, then the last available Media Segment is the last Media Segment of the previous Period. |
| 16 | In an extension of bullet 9 in section 4.3.4.1, |
| 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 | the client consumes media in one Period. Once the client is consuming media con- tained in the Segments towards the end of the announced media in the Represen- tation, and the Representation is contained not in the last Period, then the DASH clients generally needs to reselect the Adaptation Sets and a Representation in same manner as described in bullet 1 and 2 in section 4.3.4.1. Also steps 3, 4, 5 and 6 need to be carried out at the transition of a Period. Generally, audio/video switching across period boundaries may not be seamless. According to ISO/IEC 23009-1, section 7.2.1, at the start of a new Period, the playout procedure of the media content components may need to be adjusted at the end of the preceding Period to match the <i>PeriodStart</i> time of the new Period as there may be small over- laps or gaps with the Representation at the end of the preceding Period. Overlaps (respectively gaps) may result from Media Segments with actual presentation du- ration of the media stream longer (respectively shorter) than indicated by the Period duration. Also in the beginning of a Period, if the earliest presentation time of any access unit of a Representation is not equal to the presentation time offset signalled in the @presentationTimeOffset, then the playout procedures need to be ad- justed accordingly. |
| 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 | The client should play the content continuously across Periods, but there may be implications in terms of implementation to provide fully continuous and seamless playout. It may be the case that at Period boundaries, the presentation engine needs to be reinitialized, for example due to changes in formats, codecs or other properties. This may result in a re-initialization delay. Such a re-initialization delay should be minimized. If the Media Presentation is of type dynamic, the addition of the re-initialisation delay to the playout may result in drift between the encoder and the presentation engine. Therefore, the playout should be adjusted at the end of each Period to provide a continuous presentation without adding drift between the |

- time documented in the MPD and the actual playout, i.e. the difference between
 the actual playout time and the Period start time should remain constant.
- If the client presents media components of a certain Adaptation Set in one Period,
 and if the following Period has assigned an identical Asset Identifier, then the client
 should identify an associated Period and, in the absence of other information, continue playing the content in the associated Adaptation Set.
- If furthermore the Adaptation Sets are period-continuous, i.e. the presentation times
 are continuous and this is signalled in the MPD, then the client shall seamlessly
 play the content across the Period boundary under the constraints in section
 4.3.3.3.2. Most suitably the client may continue playing the Representation in the
 Adaptation Set with the same @id, but there is no guarantee that this Representation is available. In this case the client shall seamlessly switch to any other Representation in the Adaptation Set.

14 4.3.4.4. Joining, Initial Buffering and Playout Recommendations

- 15 4.3.4.4.1. General
- 16 A DASH client should start playout from:
- 17 The time indicated by the MPD Anchor, if one is present
- The live edge, if there is no MPD Anchor and MPD@type="dynamic".
- 19 **4.3.4.4.2.** Joining at the live edge
- 20 For joining at the live edge there are basically two high-level strategies:
- Every client participating in the service commits to the same presentation delay (PD) relative to the announced segment availability start time at start-up and in continuous presentation, possible using one suggested by the Content Provider and then attempts to minimise start-up latency and maintain the buffer. The content provider may have provided the MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay (SPD) or may have provided this value by other means outside the DASH formats.
- The client individually picks the presentation delay (PD) in order to maximize stable
 quality and does this dependent on its access, user preferences and other considerations.
- In both cases the client needs to decide, which segment to download first and when toschedule the playout of the segment based on the committed PD.
- 32 A DASH client would download an available segment and typically render the earliest
- 33 presentation time EPT(k) of the segment at PSwc[i] + (EPT(k) o[r,i]) + PD. As PD may
- be quite large, for example in order to provision for downloading in varying bitrate conditions, and if a segment is downloaded that was just made available it may result in larger
- 36 start up delay.
- 37 Therefore, a couple of strategies may be considered as a tradeoff of for start-up delay,
- 38 presentation delay and sufficient buffer at the beginning of the service, when joining at the
- 39 live edge:

The client downloads the next available segment and schedules playout with delay PD. This maximizes the initial buffer prior to playout, but typically results in undesired long start-up delay.

- 2. The client downloads the latest available segment and schedules playout with delay PD. This provides large initial buffer prior to playout, but typically results in undesired long start-up delay.
- The client downloads the earliest available segment that can be downloaded to schedules playout with delay PD. This provides a smaller initial prior to playout, but results in reasonable start-up delay. The buffer may be filled gradually by downloading later segments faster than their media playout rate, i.e. by initially choosing Representations that have lower bitrate than the access bandwidth.
- 12 In advanced strategies the client may apply also one or more of the following:
- 13 1. Actual rendering may start not with the sample of the earliest presentation time, but 14 the one that matches as closely as possible PSwc[i] + (PT - o[r,i]) + PD equal to 15 *NOW*.
- 16 2. The client may start rendering even if only a segment is downloaded partially.

17 4.3.4.5. Requirements and Recommendations

19

20

21

26

- 18 In summary, a client that access a dynamic MPD shall at least obey the following rules:
 - The client shall be able to consume single Period and multi-Period content
 - If multi-period content is offered in a seamless manner, the client shall play seamlessly across Period boundaries.

22 **4.3.5.** Additional DVB-DASH alignment aspects

- 23 For alignment with DVB-DASH [38], the following should be considered:
- Reasonable requirements on players around responding to response codes are provided in DVB DASH in section 10.8.6.
 - Further guidelines on live edge aspects are provided in DVB DASH section 10.9.2.
- DVB DASH also provides recommendations in order to apply weights and priorities todifferent networks in a multi Base URL offering in section 10.8.2.1.

29 4.4. Simple Live Service Offering including MPD Updates

30 4.4.1. Background and Assumptions

- If many cases, the service provider cannot predict that an MPD that is once offered, may
 be used for the entire Media Presentations. Examples for such MPD changes are:
- The duration of the Media Presentation is unknown
- The Media Presentation may be interrupted for advertisements which requires
 proper splicing of data, for example by adding a Period
- Operational issues require changes, for example the addition of removal of Representations or Adaptation Sets.
- Operational problems in the backend, for example as discussed in section 4.8.
- Changes of segment durations, etc.

1 In this case the MPD typically only can describe a limited time into the future. Once the

- 2 MPD expires, the service provider expects the client to recheck and get an updated MPD 3 in order to continue the Media Presentation.
- The main tool in MPEG-DASH is Media Presentation Description update feature as described in section 5.4 of ISO/IEC 23009-1. The MPD is updated at the server and the client is expected to obtain the new MPD information once the determined Segment List gets to
- 7 an end.
- 8 If the MPD contains the attribute MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod, then the MPD in hand
 9 will be updated.
- According to the clustering in section 4.2, we distinguish two different types of live serviceofferings:
- MPD controlled live service offering: In this case the DASH client typically frequently polls the MPD update server whether an MPD update is available or the existing MPD can still be used. The update frequency is controlled by MPD based on the attribute MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod. Such a service offering along with the client procedures is shown in section 4.4.2.
- MPD and segment controlled offerings. In this case the DASH client needs to parse segments in order to identify MPD validity expirations and updates on the MPD update server. MPD expiry events as described in section 5.10 of ISO/IEC 23009-1 "are pushed" to the DASH client as parts of downloaded media segments. This offering along with the client procedures is shown in section 4.5.

This section describes the first type of offering. In section 4.5 the MPD and segment controlled offerings are described. Under certain circumstances a service offering may be provided to both types of clients. An overview how such a service offering may be generated is shown in Annex A.

26 4.4.2. Preliminaries

27 4.4.2.1. MPD Information

As the MPD is typically updated over time on the server, the MPD that is accessed when joining the service as well as the changes of the MPD are referred to as MPD instances in the following. This expresses that for the same service, different MPDs exist depending on the time when the service is consumed.

Assume that an MPD instance is present on the DASH server at a specific wall-clock time *NOW.* For an MPD-based Live Service Offering, the MPD instance may among others contain information as available in Table 8. Information included there may be used to compute a list of announced Segments, Segment Availability Times and URLs.

Table 8 – Information related to Live Service Offering with MPD-controlled MPD Updates

| MPD Information Status Comment | | | | |
|--------------------------------|---|-----------------|--------|---------|
| | N | APD Information | Statuc | Comment |

| MPD @type | mandatory, set to "dynamic" | the type of the Media Presen- tation is dynamic, i.e. Seg- ments get available over time. |
|--|--|--|
| MPD@availabilityStartTime | mandatory | the start time is the anchor for the MPD in wall-clock time. The value is denoted as <i>AST</i> . |
| MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod | mandatory | this field is mandatory except for the case where the MPD@mediaPresenta- tionDuration is present. However, such an MPD falls then in an instance as docu- mented in section 4.3. |
| Period @start | mandatory | the start time of the Period relative to the MPD availa- bility start time. The value is denoted as <i>PS</i> . |
| SegmentTemplate@media | mandatory | the template for the Media Segment |
| SegmentTemplate@startNumber | optional default | the number of the first seg- ment in the Period. The value is denoted as <i>SSN</i> . |
| SegmentTemplate@duration SegmentTemplate.SegmentTime- line | exactly one of SegmentTem- plate@duration or Seg- mentTemplate.Seg- mentTimeline must be pre- sent | the duration of each Segment in units of a time. The value divided by the value of @timescale is denoted as MD[k] with k=1, 2, The segment timeline may con- tain some gaps. |

1 4.4.2.2. Segment Information Derivation

Based on an MPD instance including information as documented in Table 8 and available
at time *NOW* on the server, a DASH client may derive the information of the list of Segments for each Representation in each Period.

5 If the Period is the last one in the MPD and the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is present,

6 then the time PEwc[i] is obtained as the sum of NOW and the value of MPD@mini-7 mumUpdatePeriod.

- 8 Note that with the MPD present on the server and *NOW* progressing, the Period end time
- 9 is extended. This issue is the only change compared to the segment information genera-
- 10 tion in section 4.3.2.2.

1 4.4.2.3. Some Special Cases

If the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is set to 0, then the MPD documents all available
segments on the server. In this case the @r count may be set accurately as the server
knows all available information.

5 4.4.3. Service Offering Requirements and Guidelines

6 4.4.3.1. General

7 The same service requirements as in section 4.3.3.1 hold for any time NOW the MPD is
8 present on the server with the interpretation that the Period end time PEwc[i] of the last
9 Period is obtained as the sum of NOW and the value of MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod.

10 In order to offer a simple live service with unknown presentation end time, but only a single

- 11 Period and the following details are known in advance,
 - start at wall-clock time START,
 - 13 location of the segments for each Representation at " http://example.com/\$RepresentationID\$/\$Number\$",
 - 15 a service provider may offer an MPD with values according to Table 9.
 - 16

21

Table 9 – Basic Service Offering with MPD Updates

| MPD Information | Value |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| MPD @type | dynamic |
| MPD@availabilityStartTime | START |
| MPD@publishTime | PUBTIME1 |
| MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod | MUP |
| MPD.BaseURL | "http://example.com/" |
| Period @start | PSTART |
| SegmentTemplate@media | "\$RepresentationID\$/\$Num- |
| | ber\$" |
| SegmentTemplate@startNumber | 1 |
| SegmentTemplate@duration | SDURATION |

- 17 According to the work-flow shown in Annex B,
- the MPD is generated and published prior to time START such that DASH clients may access it prior to the start of the Media Presentation. The MPD gets assigned a publish time PUBTIME1, typically a value that is prior to START + PSTART
 - no redundant tools are considered.
- the encoder and the segmenter generate segments of duration SDURATION and
 publish those on the origin server, such that they are available at URL[k] latest at
 their announced segment availability start time SAST[k].

Based on the details in section 4.3.2.2 and 4.4.2.2, the Segment Information can be derived at each time *NOW* by determining the end time of the Period PEwc[1] = NOW + MUP.

The service provider may leave the MPD unchanged on the server. If this is the case the
 Media Presentation may be terminated with an updated MPD that

- adds the attribute MPD@mediaPresentationDuration with value PDURATION
- removes the attribute MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod
- changes the MPD@publishTime attribute to PUBTIME2
- The MPD must be published latest at the end of the Media Presentation minus the value
 of MUP, i.e. PUBTIME2 <= START + PSTART + PDURATION MUP.
- 8 The minimum update period may also be changed during an ongoing Media Presentation.
- 9 Note that as with any other change to the MPD, this will only be effective with a delay in
 10 media time of the value of the previous MUP.
- The principles in this document also holds for multi-period content, for which an MPD update may add a new Period. In the same way as for signalling the end of the Media Presentation, the publish time of the updated MPD with the new period needs to be done latest at the start of the new Period minus the value of the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod
- 15 attribute of the previous MPD.

3

4

5

- 16 Track fragment decode times should not roll over and should not exceed 2⁵³ (due to ob-17 served limitations in ECMAScript). Two options may be considered:
- the timescale value should be selected that the above mentioned issues are avoided. 32 bit timescales are preferable for installed-base of browsers.
- if large track timescale values are required and/or long-lasting live sessions are setup, this likely requires the use of 64 bit values. Content authors should use 64 bit values for track fragment decode times in these cases, but should not exceed to 2⁵³ to avoid truncation issues.

24 4.4.3.2. Setting the Minimum Update Period Value

- Setting the value of the minimum update period primarily affects two main service provider
 aspects: A short minimum update period results in the ability to change and announce
 new content in the MPD on shorter notice. However, by offering the MPD with a small
 minimum update period, the client requests an update of the MPD more frequently, potentially resulting in increased uplink and downlink traffic.
- A special value for the minimum update period is 0. In this case, the end time of the period is the current time *NOW*. This implies that all segments that are announced in the MPD are actually available at any point in time. This also allows changing the service provider to offer changes in the MPD that are instantaneous on the media timeline, as the client, prior for asking for a new segment, has to revalidate the MPD.

35 4.4.3.3. Permitted Updates in an MPD

- 36 According to section 5.4 of ISO/IEC 23009-1, when the MPD is updated
- the value of MPD@id, if present, shall be the same in the original and the updated
 MPD;

- the values of any Period@id attributes shall be the same in the original and the
 updated MPD, unless the containing Period element has been removed;
- the values of any AdaptationSet@id attributes shall be the same in the original
 and the updated MPD unless the containing Period element has been removed;
- any Representation with the same @id and within the same Period as a Representation appearing in the previous MPD shall provide functionally equivalent attributes and elements, and shall provide functionally identical Segments with the same indices in the corresponding Representation in the new MPD.

9 In addition, updates in the MPD only extend the timeline. This means that information
10 provided in a previous version of the MPD shall not be invalidated in an updated MPD.
11 For failover cases, refer to section 4.8.

In order to make the MPD joining friendly and to remove data that is available in the past, any segments that have fallen out of the time shift buffer may no longer be announced in the MPD. In this case, the Period start may be moved by changing one or both, MPD@availabilityStartTime and Period@start. However, this requires that the @startNumber, @presentationTimeOffset and s values need to be updated such that the Segment Information according to section 4.3.2.2.6 is not modified over an MPD update.

If Representations and Adaptations Sets are added or removed or the location of the Seg ments is changed, it is recommended to update the MPD and provide Adaptation Sets in
 a period-continuous manner as defined in section 4.3.3.3.2.

22 4.4.3.4. Usage of Segment Timeline

27

28

- 23 If the Segment Timeline is used and @minimumUpdatePeriod greater than 0, then
- the operation as described in section 4.3.3.4 applies, and for all Representations that use the Segment Timeline:
 the @r value of the last s element of the last regular Period shall be a nega-
 - the @r value of the last s element of the last regular Period shall be a negative value,
 - o only \$Number\$ template shall be used,
- an MPD may be published for which the additional s elements are added at the end. An addition of such s element shall be such that clients that have not updated the MPD can still generate the Segment Information based on the previous MPD up to the Period end time. Note that this may lead that such clients have a different segment availability time, but the availability time may be corrected once the MPD at is updated.

An example for such an offering is shown in Table 10 where the RVALUE needs to be increased by 1 for each newly published segment.

37 Table 10 – Service Offering with Segment Timeline and MUP greater than 0

| MPD Information | Value |
|---------------------------|---------|
| MPD @type | dynamic |
| MPD@availabilityStartTime | START |

| MPD@publishTime | PUBTIME1 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod | MUP > 0 |
| MPD.BaseURL | "http://example.com/" |
| Period@start | PSTART |
| SegmentTemplate@media | "\$RepresentationID\$/\$Time\$" |
| SegmentTemplate@d | SDURATION |
| SegmentTemplate.SegmentTime- | _1 |
| line.S@r | |

1 4.4.3.5. Last Segment Message

If the @segmentProfiles contains the 'lmsg' brand for a certain Representation, then the
'lmsg' brand for signaling the last segment shall be applied for any content with MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod present and the MPD@type="dynamic".

5 DASH clients operating based on such an MPD and consuming the service at the live edge typi-6 cally need to request a new MPD prior to downloading a new segment. However, in order to min-7 imise MPD requests and resulting traffic load, the client may use one or more of the following 8 optimisations:

- 9 If the client fetches the MPD using HTTP, the client should use conditional GET methods as specified in RFC 2616 [22], clause 9.3 to reduce unnecessary network usage in the downlink.
- If the @segmentProfiles contains the 'lmsg' brand clients may also rely on the 'lmsg' message and request a new MPD only in case a segment is received with an 'lmsg' brand. Otherwise the client may use template constructions to continue determining the URL and the segment availability start time of segments.
- 16 If the attribute MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is set to a value greater than 0 then all Segments 17 with availability start time less than the sum of the request time and the value of the MPD@mini-18 mumUpdatePeriod will eventually get available at the advertised position at their computed 19 segment availability start time. Note that by providing a MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is set 20 to a value greater than 0, DASH servers reduce the polling frequency of clients, but at the same 21 time cannot expect that clients will request an updated MPD to be informed on changes in the 22 segment URL constructions, e.g. at the start of a new Period.

23 4.4.4. MPD-based Live Client Operation based on MPD

In an extension to the description in section 4.3.4.1 and section 4.3.4.3, the client now has access to an MPD and the MPD contains the **MPD**@minimumUpdatePeriod, for example following the parameters in Table 9. The start time of each Period is computed as period start time *PSwc[i*] and the MPD-URL does not include any fragment parameters according to section 4.3.3.5.

29 The client fetches an MPD with parameters in Table 8 access to the MPD at time 30 FetchTime, at its initial location if no MPD.Location element is present, or at a location

- 31 specified in any present MPD. Location element. FetchTime is defined as the time at
- 32 which the server processes the request for the MPD from the client. The client typically

1 should not use the time at which it actually successfully received the MPD, but should take

2 into account delay due to MPD delivery and processing. The fetch is considered success-

3 ful either if the client obtains an updated MPD or the client verifies that the MPD has not

4 been updated since the previous fetching.

5 If the client fetches the MPD using HTTP, the client should use conditional GET methods 6 as specified in RFC 2616 [9], clause 9.3 to reduce unnecessary network usage in the 7 downlink.

8 In an extension of bullet 3 in section 4.3.4.1 and section 4.3.4.3

the client creates a list of accessible Segments at least for each selected Representation taking into account the information in the MPD as documented in Table
8 and the current time NOW by using the Period end time of the last Period as
FetchTime + MUP.

- 13 In an extension of bullet 9 in section 4.3.4.1 and section 4.3.4.3,
- the client consumes media in last announced Period. Once the client is consuming media contained in the Segments towards the end of the announced Period, i.e. requesting segments with segment availability start time close to the validity time of the MPD defined as FetchTime + MUP, them, then the DASH client needs to fetch an MPD at its initial location if no MPD.Location element is present, or at a location specified in any present MPD.Location element.
- If the client fetches the updated MPD using HTTP, the client should use conditional
 GET methods as specified in RFC 2616, clause 9.3 to reduce unnecessary network
 usage in the downlink.
- The client parses the MPD and generates a new segment list based on the new FetchTime and MUP of the updated MPD. The client searches for the currently consumed Adaptation Sets and Representations and continues the process of downloading segments based on the updated Segment List.

4.5. MPD and Segment-based Live Service Offering

28 **4.5.1.** Preliminaries

29 **4.5.1.1.** MPD Information

In order to offer a service that relies on both, information in the MPD and in Segments, the
Service Provider may announce that Segments contains inband information. An MPD as
shown in Table 9 provides the relevant information. In contrast to the offering in Table 6,
the following information is different:

- The MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is present but is recommended to be set to 0 in order to announce instantaneous segment updates.
- The MPD@publishTime is present in order to identify different versions of MPD
 instances.
- all Representations of all audio Adaptation Sets or if audio is not present, of all video Adaptation Sets, shall contain an InbandEventStream element with

1 @scheme_id_uri = "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value either set 2 to 1 or set to 3. The InbandEventStream element with @scheme_id_uri = 3 "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value either set to 1 or set to 3 may be 4 present in all Representations of all Adaptation Sets.

- InbandEventStream element with @scheme_id_uri =
 "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value either set to 1 or set to 3 shall only
 be signaled on Adaptation Set level.
- 8 The information included there may be used to compute a list of announced Segments,9 Segment Availability Times and URLs.

10

Table 11 – Service Offering with MPD and Segment-based Live Services

| MPD Information | Status | Comment |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| MPD @type | mandatory, set to "dynamic" | the type of the Media Presen- tation is dynamic, i.e. Seg- ments get available over time. |
| MPD@publishTime | mandatory | specifies the wall-clock time when the MPD was gener- ated and published at the origin server. MPDs with a later value of @pub- lishTime shall be an up- date as defined in 5.4 to MPDs with earlier @pub- lishTime. |
| MPD@availabilityStartTime | mandatory | the start time is the anchor for the MPD in wall-clock time. The value is denoted as <i>AST</i> . |
| MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod | mandatory | recommended/mandate to be set to 0 to indicate that fre- quent DASH events may oc- cur |
| Period @start | mandatory | the start time of the Period relative to the MPD availa- bility start time. The value is denoted as <i>PS</i> . |
| AdaptationSet.InbandEvent- Stream | mandatory | <pre>if the @schemeIDURI is urn:mpeg:dash:event :2014 and the @value is 1, 2 or 3, then this described</pre> |

| | | an Event Stream that sup- ports extending the validity of the MPD. |
|--|--|--|
| SegmentTemplate@media | mandatory | the template for the Media Segment |
| SegmentTemplate@startNumber | optional default | The number of the first seg- ment in the Period. The value is denoted as <i>SSN</i> . |
| SegmentTemplate@duration SegmentTemplate.SegmentTime- line | exactly one of SegmentTem- plate@duration or Seg- mentTemplate.Seg- mentTimeline must be pre- sent | the duration of each Segment in units of a time. The value divided by the value of @timescale is denoted as MD[k] with k=1, 2, The segment timeline may con- tain some gaps. |

1 4.5.1.2. Segment Information Derivation

- 2 Based on an MPD instance including information as documented in Table 8 and available
- at time *NOW* on the server, a DASH client may derive the information of the list of Seg-
- 4 ments for each Representation in each Period.
- 5 If the Period is the last one in the MPD and the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is present,
- 6 then the time *PEwc[i*] is obtained as the sum of *NOW* and the value of MPD@mini-
- 7 mumUpdatePeriod.
- 8 Note that with the MPD present on the server and *NOW* progressing, the Period end time 9 is extended. This issue is the only change compared to the segment information genera-
- 10 tion in section 4.3.2.2.
- If the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is set to 0, then the MPD documents all available segments on the server. In this case the @r count may be set accurately as the server knows all available information.

14 **4.5.2.** Service Offering Requirements and Guidelines

15 **4.5.2.1.** Background

- 16 In section 5.10 of ISO/IEC 23009-1, section 5.10, DASH events are defined. For service
- 17 offerings based on the MPD and segment controlled services, the DASH events specified
- 18 in section 5.10.4 may be used. Background is provided in the following.
- 19 DASH specific events that are of relevance for the DASH client are signalled in the MPD.
- 20 The URN "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" is defined to identify the event scheme de-
- fined in Table 10.

1 Table 12 InbandEventStream@value attribute for scheme with a value 2 "urn:mpeq:dash:event:2012"

| @ value | Description |
|----------------|---|
| 1 | indicates that MPD validity expiration events as defined in 5.10.4.2 are signalled in the Representation. MPD validity expiration is signalled in the event stream as defined in 5.10.4.2 at least in the last segment with earliest presentation time smaller than the event time. |
| 2 | indicates that MPD validity expiration events as defined in 5.10.4.3 are signalled in the Representation. MPD validity expiration is signalled in the event stream as defined in 5.10.4.2 at least in the last segment with earliest presentation time smaller than the event time. In addition the message includes an MPD Patch as defined in 5.10.4.3 in the message_data field. |
| 3 | indicates that MPD validity expiration events as defined in 5.10.4.3 are signalled in the Representation. MPD validity expiration is signalled in the event stream as defined in 5.10.4.2 at least in the last segment with earliest presentation time smaller than the event time. In addition the message includes a full MPD as defined in 5.10.4.4 in the message_data field. |

Note: DVB DASH specification [38] does not include the value 3.

3

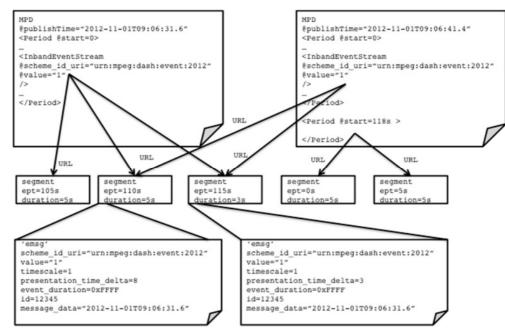
4 MPD validity expiration events provide the ability to signal to the client that the MPD with 5 a specific publish time can only be used up to a certain media presentation time.

Figure 4 shows an example for MPD validity expiration method. An MPD signals the presence of the scheme in one or several Representations. Once a new MPD gets available,

8 that adds new information not present in the MPD with @publishTime="2012-11-

9 01T09:06:31.6", the expiration time of the current MPD is added to the segment by

10 using the emsg box. The information may be present in multiple segments.



1 2

5

6

Figure 4 Example for MPD validity expiration to signal new Period

3 If the scheme_id_uri is set to "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and the value is set 4 to 1, then the fields in the event message box document the following:

- the message_data field contains the publish time of an MPD, i.e. the value of the MPD@publishTime.
- The media presentation time beyond the event time (indicated time by presentation_time_delta) is correctly described only by MPDs with publish time greater than indicated value in the message_data field.
- the event duration expresses the remaining duration of Media Presentation from the event time. If the event duration is 0, Media Presentation ends at the event time.
 If 0xFFFF, the media presentation duration is unknown. In the case in which both presentation_time_delta and event_duration are zero, then the Media Presentation is ended.

This implies that clients attempting to process the Media Presentation at the event time or
later are expected to operate on an MPD with a publish time that is later than the indicated
publish time in this box.

18 Note that event boxes in different segments may have identical id fields, but different 19 values for presentation_time_delta if the earliest presentation time is different 20 across segments.

21 4.5.2.2. Service Offering

A typical service offering with an Inband event stream is provided in Table 11. In this case the MPD contains information that one or multiple or all Representations contain information that the Representation contains an event message box flow in order to signal MPD validity expirations. The MPD@publishTime shall be present.

1

Table 13 – Basic Service Offering with Inband Events

| MPD Information | Value |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| MPD @type | dynamic |
| MPD@availabilityStartTime | START |
| MPD@publishTime | PUBTIME1 |
| MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod | MUP |
| MPD.BaseURL | "http://example.com/" |
| Period@start | PSTART |
| InbandEvent- | urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012 |
| Stream@scheme_id_URI | |
| InbandEventStream@value | 1 or 3 |
| SegmentTemplate@duration | SDURATION |

For a service offering based on MPD and segment-based controls, the DASH events shallbe used to signal MPD validity expirations.

4 In this case the following shall apply:

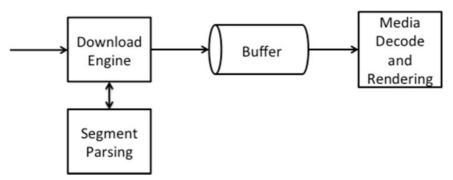
| 5 | • at least all Representations of all audio Adaptation Sets shall contain an In- |
|----------|--|
| 6 | <pre>bandEventStream element with scheme_id_uri =</pre> |
| 7 | "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2014" and @value either set to 1 or set to 3. |
| 8 | for each newly published MPD, that includes changes that are not restricted to any |
| 9 | of the following (e.g. a new Period): |
| 10 | The value of the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is changed, |
| 11 | The value of a SegmentTimeline.S@r has changed, |
| 12 | A new SegmentTimeline.S element is added |
| 13 | Changes that do not modify the semantics of the MPD, e.g. data falling out |
| 14 | of the timeshift buffer can be removed, changes to service offerings that do |
| 15 | not affect the client, etc. |
| 16 | the following shall be done |
| 17 | • a new MPD shall be published with a new publish time MPD@publishTime |
| 18 | • an 'emsg' box shall be added to each segment of each Representation that |
| 19 | contains an InbandEventStream element with |
| 20 | o scheme_id_uri = "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" |
| 21 | o @value either set to 1 or set to 3 |
| 22 | o If @value set to 1 or 3 |
| 23 | the value of the MPD@publishTime of the previous MPD as |
| 24 | the message_data |
| 25 26 | In addition, the following recommendations should be taken into account: All Representa- tions of at least one media type/group contain an InbandEventStream element with |
| 27 28 | <pre>scheme_id_uri = "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value either set to 1 or set to 3.</pre> |

1 4.5.3. Client Requirements and Guidelines

2 4.5.3.1. Introduction

A DASH client is guided by the information provided in the MPD. An advanced client model is shown in Figure 6. In contrast to the client in section 4.4.3.5, the advanced client requires parsing of segments in order to determine the following information:

- to expand the Segment List, i.e. to generate the Segment Availability Start Time as well as the URL of the next Segment by parsing the Segment Index.
- to update the MPD based on Inband Event Messages using the 'emsg' box with
 scheme_id_uri="urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value either set to 1
 or set to 3.



11 12

20

6

7

Figure 6 Advanced Client Model

Assumes that the client has access to an MPD and the MPD contains the mandatoryparameters in Table 9, i.e., it contains the following information:

- 15 MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is set to 0
- 16 MPD@publishTime is included and the value is set to PUBTIME
- At least on Representation is present that contains an InbandEventStream ele ment with scheme_id_uri="urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value ei ther set to 1 or set to 3.
 - Either the @duration or SegmentTimeline for the Representation is present.

In an extension of bullet 7, 8 and 9 in section 4.3.4.1 and section 4.3.4.3, the following
example client behaviour may provide a continuous streaming experience to the user as
documented in the following.

24 4.5.3.2. MPD Validity expiration and Updates

The DASH client shall download at least one Representation that contains InbandEventStream element with scheme_id_uri = "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value either set to 1 or set to 3. It shall parse the segment at least up to the first 'moof' box. The DASH client shall parse the segment information and extract the following values:

- 30 ept the earliest presentation time of the media segment
- 31 dur the media presentation duration of the media segment

I If an 'emsg' is detected scheme_id_uri = "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value either set to 1 or set to 3, the DASH client shall parse the segment information and extract the following values:

- emsg.publish_time the publish time documented in the message data of the emsg, either directly or from the patch.
- emsg.ptd the presentation time delta as documented in the emsg.
 - emsg.ed the event duration as documented in the emsg

After parsing, the Segment is typically forwarded to the media pipeline if it also used for
rendering, but it may either be dumped (if the Representation is only used to access the
DASH event, such as muted audio).

- 11 If no 'emsg' validity expiration event is included, then
- the current MPD can at least be used up to a media presentation time ept + dur
- 13 else if an 'emsg' validity expiration event is included, then
- the MPD with publish time equal to emsg.publish_time can only be used up to
 a media presentation time ept + emsg.ptd. Note that if dur > emsg.ptd, then
 the Period is terminated at ept + emsg.ptd.
 - any MPD with publish time greater than emsg.publish_time can at least be used up to a media presentation time ept + emsg.ptd
- prior to generating a segment request with earliest presentation time greater than
 ept + emsg.ptd, the MPD shall either
 - \circ be refetched and updated by the client.
 - o or if @value=3, it may be used as included in the message.
- 22 23 24

25

26

31

32

33

34

36 37

38

21

17

18

7

NOTE: The DVB DASH profile [38] explicitly forbids downloading a Representation solely to gain access to an Inband Event Stream contained within it. For reference, the relevant part of the DVB DASH specification is section 9.1.6.

27 4.5.3.3. Extended Segment Information

The DASH client shall download the selected Representation and shall parse the segment at least up to the first 'moof' box. The DASH client shall parse the segment information and extract the following values:

• ept the earliest presentation time of the media segment

- if the Segment Index is present use the Segments Index
- if not use the baseMediaDecodeTime in 'tfdt' of the first movie fragment as the earliest presentation time
- 35 dur the media presentation duration of the media segment
 - if the Segment Index is present use the Segments Index
 - if not use aggregated sample durations of the first movie fragment as the duration

Using this information, the DASH client should extend the Segment information and, if present the Segment Timeline with the information provided in the Segment. This information can then be used to generate the URL of the next Segment of this Representation. This avoids that the client fetches the MPD, but uses the information of the Segment Timeline. However, in any doubt of the information, for example if a new Adaptation Set is selected, or if Segments or lost, or in case of other operational issues, the DASH client may refetch the MPD in order to obtain the complete information from the MPD.

8 4.6. Provisioning of Live Content in On-Demand Mode

9 **4.6.1.** Scenario

33

34

35

36 37

38 39

A common scenario for DASH distribution results that a live generated service is also
 made available for On-Demand offering after the live program is completed. The typical
 scenario is as follows:

- The Segments as generated for the live service are also used for the On-Demand
 case. This avoids reformatting and also permits to reuse the Segments that are
 already cached.
- 16 The MPD is modified to reflect that the content is available as On-Demand now.
- Problems that results from live delivery may be solved, e.g. variable segment durations, or issues of segment unavailability.
- 19 The content may be augmented with ads.
- The content may be trimmed from a longer, e.g. 24/7 stream, at the beginning and/or end.

22 **4.6.2.** Content Offering Requirements and Recommendations

In order to provide live content as On-Demand in the above scenario, the following isrecommended:

- The same Segments as generated for the live distribution are reused also for static
 distribution.
- Typically, the Segments also will have the same URL in order to exploit caching
 advantages.
- An MPD should be generated latest at the end of the live session, but also may be
 created during an ongoing live session to document a certain window of the pro gram that is offered for On-Demand.
- 32 A new MPD is generated that should contain the following information
 - o The MPD@type is set to static.
 - The MPD@availabilityStartTime may be set to any time in the past, for example the time of the original "live" MPD may reused.
 - As profile, the simple live profile may be used
 - o The attributes @timeShiftBufferDepth and @minimumUpdatePeriod are not present (in contrast to the live MPD) and a @mediaPresenta-tionDuration attribute is added.
- 40•The window offered by the MPD is expressed by appropriately setting the41Period@start value (including the presentation time offset and the start

| 1 | | number) and the @mediaPresentationDuration attribute. The wall- |
|----|---|---|
| 2 | | clock time should be maintained by offsetting the Period @start without |
| 3 | | changing the MPD@availabilityStartTime. |
| 4 | 0 | Content may be offered in the same Period structure as for live or in a dif- |
| 5 | 0 | ferent one. |
| 6 | | If Periods are continuous, it is preferable to remove the Period struc- |
| 7 | | ture. |
| 8 | | If new Periods are added for Ad Insertion, the Periods preferably be |
| 9 | | added in a way that they are at Segment boundaries. |
| 10 | 0 | Independent whether the @duration attribute or the SegmentTimeline |
| 11 | | element was used for the dynamic distribution, the static distribution version |
| 12 | | may have a SegmentTimeline with accurate timing to support seeking |
| 13 | | and to possibly also signal any gaps in the Segment timeline. To obtain the |
| 14 | | accurate timeline, the segments may have to be parsed (at least up to the |
| 15 | | tfdt) to extract the duration of each Segment. |
| 16 | 0 | The same templating mode as used in the live service should also be used |
| 17 | | for static distribution. |
| 18 | 0 | DASH Event streams (i.e., MPD validity expirations) should not be present |
| 19 | | in the MPD. |

20 **4.6.3.** Client Behavior

For a DASH client, there is basically no difference on whether the content was generated from a live service or the content is provided as On-Demand. However, there are some aspects that may be "left-overs" from a live service distribution that a DASH client should be aware of:

- The Representations may show gaps in the Segment Timeline. Such gaps should be recognized and properly handled. For example a DASH client may find a gap only in one Representation of the content and therefore switches to another Representation that has no gap.
- The DASH client shall ignore any possibly present DASH Event boxes (e.g., MPD validity expirations) for which no Inband Event Stream is present in the MPD.

4.7. Availability Time Synchronization between Client and Server

33 **4.7.1. Background**

According to ISO/IEC 23009-1 [1] and section 4.3, in order to properly access MPDs and Segments that are available on origin servers or get available over time, DASH servers and clients should synchronize their clocks to a globally accurate time standard.

Specifically Segment Availability Times are expected to be wall-clock accurately an-nounced in the MPD and the client needs to have access to the same time base as the

- 39 MPD generation in order to enable a proper service. In order to ensure this, this section
- 40 provides server and client requirements to ensure proper operation of a live service.

1 4.7.2. Service Provider Requirements and Guidelines

If the Media Presentation is dynamic or if the MPD@availabilityStartTime is present
 then the service shall provide a Media Presentation as follows:

- The segment availability times announced in the MPD should be generated from a device that is synchronized to a globally accurate timing source, preferably using NTP.
 The MPD should contain at least one UTCTiming element with @schemeIdURI
 - The MPD should contain at least one UTCTiming element with @schemeIdURI set to one of the following:
- 9 10

8

11 12

13

17

18

19

- o urn:mpeg:dash:utc:ntp:2014
 - o urn:mpeg:dash:utc:http-head:2014
 o urn:mpeg:dash:utc:http-xsdate:2014
- o urn:mpeg:dash:utc:http-iso:2014
 - o urn:mpeg:dash:utc:http-ntp:2014
- If the MPD does not contain any element UTCTiming then the segments shall be available latest at the announced segment availability time using a globally accurate timing source.
 - If the MPD contains an element UTCTiming then
 - the announced timing information in the UTCTiming shall be accessible to the DASH client, and
- the segments shall be available latest at the announced segment availabil ity time in the MPD for any device that uses one of announced time syn chronization methods at the same time.

If urn:mpeg:dash:utc:http-head:2014 is used, then the server specified in the
@value attribute of the UTCTiming element should be the server hosting the DASH segments such that with each request the Date general-header field in the HTTP header (see
RFC2616 [18], section 14.18) can be used by the client to maintain synchronization.

Note that in practical deployments segment availability may be an issue due to failures,
losses, outages and so on. In this case the Server should use methods as defined in
section 4.8 to inform DASH clients about potential issues on making segments available.

A leap second is added to UTC every 18 months on average. A service provider should take into account the considerations in RFC 7164 [46].

The MPD time does not track leap seconds. If these occur during a live service they may advance or retard the media against the real time.

34 **4.7.3.** Client Requirements and Guidelines

- If the Media Presentation is dynamic or if the MPD@availabilityStartTime is present
 then client should do the following:
- If the MPD does not contain any element UTCTiming it should acquire an accurate wall-clock time from its system. The anticipated inaccuracy of the timing source should be taken into account when requesting segments close to their segment availability time boundaries.

If the MPD contains one or several elements UTCTiming then the client should at least use one of the announced timing information in the UTCTiming to synchronize its clock. The client must not request segments prior to the segment availability start time with reference to any of the chosen UTCTiming methods.

9

13

14

32

33

- Note: The DVB DASH [38] spec requires support for http-xsdate and http-head but allows content providers to include others in addition, and allows clients to choose others in preference if they wish. For details, refer to section 4.7 of the DVB DASH specification.
- The client may take into account the accuracy of the timing source as well as any transmission delays if it makes segment requests.
- Clients shall observe any difference between their time zone and the one identi fied in the MPD, as MPDs may indicate a time which is not in the same timezone
 as the client.
 - If the client observes that segments are not available at their segment availability start time, the client should use the recovery methods defined in section 4.8.
- Clients should not access the UTCTiming server more frequently than necessary.

17 4.8. Robust Operation

18 **4.8.1. Background**

In order to support some of the advanced use cases documented in section 2, robustservice offerings and clients are relevant. This document lists the relevant ones.

21 **4.8.2.** Tools for Robust Operations

22 4.8.2.1. General Robustness

- 23 General Guidelines in ISO/IEC 23009-1 [1] DASH spec in A.7:
- 24 The DASH access client provides a streaming service to the user by issuing HTTP • requests for Segments at appropriate times. The DASH access client may also 25 26 update the MPD by using HTTP requests. In regular operation mode, the server 27 typically responds to such requests with status code 200 OK (for regular GET) or 28 status code 206 Partial Content (for partial GET) and the entity corresponding to 29 the requested resource. Other Successful 2xx or Redirection 3xx status codes may 30 be returned. 31
 - HTTP requests may result in a Client Error 4xx or Server Error 5xx status code. Some guidelines are provided in this subclause as to how an HTTP client may react to such error codes.
- If the DASH access client receives an HTTP client or server error (i.e. messages with 4xx or 5xx error code), the client should respond appropriately (e.g. as indicated in RFC 2616) to the error code. In particular, clients should handle redirections (such as 301 and 307) as these may be used as part of normal operation.
- If the DASH access client receives a repeated HTTP error for the request of an MPD, the appropriate response may involve terminating the streaming service.

If the DASH access client receives an HTTP client error (i.e. messages with 4xx error code) for the request of an Initialization Segment, the Period containing the Initialization Segment may not be available anymore or may not be available yet.

- Similarly, if the DASH access client receives an HTTP client error (i.e. messages with 4xx error code) for the request of a Media Segment, the requested Media Segment may not be available anymore or may not be available yet. In both these case the client should check if the precision of the time synchronization to a globally accurate time standard is sufficiently accurate. If the clock is believed accurate, or the error re-occurs after any correction, the client should check for an update of the MPD.
- Upon receiving server errors (i.e. messages with 5xx error code), the client should check for an update of the MPD. If multiple BaseURL elements are available, the client may also check for alternative instances of the same content that are hosted on a different server.

15 4.8.3. Synchronization Loss of Segmenter

In order to address synchronization loss issues at the segmenter, the following options
from the DASH standard should be considered with preference according to the order
below:

- The server is required to always offer a conforming media stream. In case the input stream or encoder is lost, the content author may always add dummy content. This may be done using a separate Period structure and is possible without any modifications of the standard.
- 23 2. Short Periods as included Cor.1 of the second edition of ISO/IEC 23009-1. Short 24 Periods may be added that contain both Period@start and Period@dura-25 tion. This expresses that for this Period no media is present at least for the time 26 as expressed by the @duration attribute. Such Periods should only be used if 27 Media Presentation author is experiencing issues in generating media, e.g. due to 28 failures of a live feed. The MPD is updated using the @minimumUpdatePeriod, 29 i.e. the timeline is progressing. This permits server to signal that there is an outage 30 of media generation, but that the service is continuing. It is then up to the client to 31 take appropriate actions.

32 **4.8.4.** Encoder Clock Drift

In order to support robust offering even under encoder drift circumstances, the segmenter should avoid being synced to the encoder clock. In order to improve robustness, in the case of an MPD-based offering Periods should be added in a period continuous manner. In the case of MPD and segment-based control, the producer reference box should be added to media streams in order for the media pipeline to be aware of such drifts. In this case the client should parse the segment to obtain this information.

39 **4.8.5.** Segment Unavailability

To address signaling of segment unavailability between the client and server and to indicate the reason for this, it is recommended to use regular 404s. In addition, unless a UTC 1 Timing has been defined prior in the MPD, the Date-Header specifying the time of the 2 server should be used. In this case, the DASH client, when receiving a 404, knows that if 3 its time is matching the Date Header, then the loss is due to a segment loss.

4 4.8.6. Swapping across Redundant Tools

5 To enable swapping across redundant tools doing hot and warm swaps, the following 6 should be considered

- the content author is offering the service redundant to the client (for example using multiple BaseURLs) and the client determines the availability of one or the other. This may be possible under certain circumstances
- Periods may be inserted at a swap instance in order to provide the new infor mation after swap. If possible, the offering may be continuous, but the offering
 may also be non-continuous from a media time perspective.
- A completely new MPD is sent that removes all information that was available
 before any only maintains some time continuity. However, this tool is not fully
 supported yet in any DASH standard and not even considered.

16 There is a clear preference for the bullets above in their order 1, 2 and 3 as the service 17 continuity is expected to be smoother with higher up in the bullet list. At the same time, it 18 may be the case that the failure and outages are severe and only the third option may be 19 used.

20 **4.8.7.** Service Provider Requirements and Guidelines

21 The requirements and guidelines in subsections 8.2 to 8.6 shall be followed.

22 4.8.8. Client Requirements and Guidelines

The client shall implement proper methods to deal with service offerings provided in section 8.2 to 8.6.

25 **4.9.** Interoperability Aspects

26 4.9.1. Introduction

In order to provide interoperability based on the tools introduce in this section a restrictedset of interoperability points are defined.

29 4.9.2. Simple Live Operation

30 4.9.2.1. Definition

- 31 The simple live interoperability point permits service offerings with formats defined in the
- first edition of ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4] as well as in DASH-IF IOPs up to version 2. The DASH
 client *is not required to parse media segments for proper operation*, but can rely exclusively on the information in the MPD..

35 4.9.2.2. Service Requirements and Recommendations

36 Service offerings conforming to this operation shall follow

- 1 The general requirements and guidelines in section 4.3.3
 - the MPD Update requirements and guidelines in section 4.4.3
- the requirements and guidelines for service offering of live content in on-demand 3 4 mode in section 4.6.2
 - the synchronization requirements and guidelines in section 4.7.2 •
 - the robustness requirements and guidelines in section 4.8.7 •

7 4.9.2.3. **Client Requirements and Recommendations**

- 8 Clients claiming conformance to this operation shall follow
 - The general requirements and guidelines in section 4.3.4 ٠
 - the MPD Update requirements and guidelines in section 4.4.3.5
 - the requirements and guidelines for service offering of live content in on-demand mode in section 4.6.3.
- the synchronization requirements and guidelines in section 4.7.3, 13 •
- 14 the robustness requirements and guidelines in section 4.8.8, •

4.9.3. Main Live Operation 15

4.9.3.1. 16 Definition

- 17 The main live operation permits service offerings with formats defined in the second edi-
- tion of ISO/IEC 23009-1 [1]. In this case the DASH client may be required to parse media 18 19 segments for proper operation.

20 4.9.3.2. Service Requirements and Recommendations

- 21 Service offerings claiming conformance to main live shall follow
 - the requirements and guidelines in section 4.3.3
 - either •
 - the requirements and guidelines in section 4.4.3. Note that in this case no profile identifier needs to be added.
- 26 or •

2

5

6

9

10

11

12

22

23

24

25

27 28

29

30 31

32

37

38

- o the segment-based MPD update requirements and guidelines in section 4.5.2. In this case the profile identifier shall be added.
- the requirements and guidelines for service offering of live content in on-demand mode in section 4.6.2
- the synchronization requirements and guidelines in section 4.7.2 •
- the robustness requirements and guidelines in section 4.8.7 •

33 4.9.3.3. **Client Requirements and Recommendations**

- 34 Clients claiming conformance to main live shall follow
- 35 • the requirements and guidelines in section 4.3.4, 36
 - the MPD-update requirements and guidelines in section 4.4.3.5,
 - the segment-based MPD update requirements and guidelines in section 4.5.3,
- the requirements and guidelines for service offering of live content in on-demand • 39 mode in section 4.6.3.

- the synchronization requirements and guidelines in section 4.7.3,
 - the robustness requirements and guidelines in section 4.8.8.

3 5. Ad Insertion in DASH

4 5.1. Introduction

5 **5.1.1. General**

2

6 This section provides recommendations for implementing ad insertion in DASH. Specifically, it
 7 defines the reference architecture and interoperability points for a DASH-based ad insertion solution.

- 9 The baseline reference architecture addresses both server-based and app-based scenarios. The for-
- 10 mer approach is what is typically used for Apple HLS, while the latter is typically used with Mi-
- 11 crosoft SmoothStreaming and Adobe HDS.

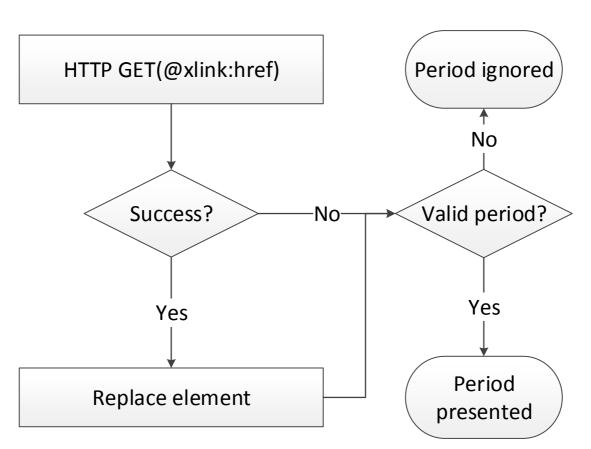
12 5.1.2. DASH Concepts

- 13 DASH ad insertion relies on several DASH tools defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1 [5], which are in-
- 14 troduced in this section. The correspondence between these tools and ad insertion concepts are 15 explained below.

16 5.1.2.1. Remote Elements

Remote elements are elements that are not fully contained in the MPD document but are referencedin the MPD with an HTTP-URL using a simplified profile of XLink.

- 19 A remote element has two attributes, @xlink:href and @xlink:actuate.@xlink:href
- 20 contains the URL for the complete element, while <code>@xlink:actuate</code> specifies the resolution
- 21 model. The value "onLoad" requires immediate resolution at MPD parse time, while "onRe-
- 22 quest" allows deferred resolution at a time when an XML parser accesses the remote element.
- In this text we assume deferred resolution of remote elements, unless explicitly stated otherwise.While there is no explicit timing model for earliest time when deferred resolution can occur, the
- 25 specification strongly suggests it should be close to the expected playout time of the corresponding
- 26 Period. A reasonable approach is to choose the resolution at the nominal download time of the
- 27 Segment.



1 2

Figure 7: XLink resolution

Resolution (a.k.a. dereferencing) consists of two steps. Firstly, a DASH client issues an HTTP GET request to the URL contained in the @xlink:href, attribute of the *in-MPD element*, and the XLink resolver responds with a *remote element entity* in the response content. In case of error response or syntactically invalid remote element entity, the @xlink:href and

7 @xlink:actuate attributes the client shall remove the *in-MPD element*.

8 If the value of the @xlink:href attribute is urn:mpeg:dash:resolve-to-zero:2013,

9 HTTP GET request is not issued, and the in-MPD element shall be removed from the MPD. This10 special case is used when a remote element can be accessed (and resolved) only once during the

11 time at which a given version of MPD is valid.

12 If a syntactically valid remote element entity was received, the DASH client will replace in-MPD13 element with remote period entity.

- 14 Once a remote element entity is resolved into a fully specified element, it may contain an 15 @xlink:href attribute, which contains a new XLink URL allowing repeated resolution.
- 16 Note that the only information passed from the DASH client to the XLink resolver is encoded
- 17 within the URL. Hence there may be a need to incorporate parameters into it, such as splice time
- 18 (i.e., *PeriodStart* for the remote period) or cue message.

1 5.1.2.2. Periods

2 **5.1.2.2.1.** Timing

Periods are time-delimited parts of a DASH Media Presentation. The value of *PeriodStart* can be
 explicitly stated using the **Period**@start attribute or indirectly computed using **Period**@du ration of the previous Periods.

6 Precise period duration of period *i* is given by PeriodStart(i+1) - PeriodStart(i). This can accommodate the case where media duration of period *i* is slightly longer than the period itself, in which case a client will schedule the start of media presentation for period *i*+1 at time PeriodStart(i+1).

9 Representation@presentationTimeOffset specifies the value of the presentation 10 time at PeriodStart(i).

11 5.1.2.2.2. Segment Availability

12 In case of dynamic MPDs, Period-level BaseURL@availabilityTimeOffset allow earlier

13 availability start times. A shorthand notation @availabilityTimeOffset="INF" at a Pe-

14 riod-level **BaseURL** indicates that the segments within this period are available at least as long as

15 the current MPD is valid. This is the case with stored ad content. Note that DASH also allows

16 specification of @availabilityTimeOffset at Adaptation Set and Representation level.

17 **5.1.2.2.3.** Seamless transition

18 The DASH specification says nothing about Period transitions – i.e., there are no guarantees for

- seamless continuation of playout across the period boundaries. Content conditioning and receiver
 capability requirements should be defined for applications relying on this functionality. However,
 Period continuity may be used and signaled using the tools defined in ISO/IEC 23009-
- **22** 1:2014/Amd.3 [5].

23 5.1.2.2.4. Period labeling

Period-level AssetIdentifier descriptors identify the asset to which a given Period belongs.
Beyond identification, this can be used for implementation of client functionality that depends on
distinguishing between ads and main content (e.g. progress bar and random access).

27 **5.1.2.3. DASH events**

28 DASH events are messages having type, timing and optional payload. They can appear either in

- 29 MPD (as period-level event stream) or inband, as ISO-BMFF boxes of type `emsg`. The `emsg`
- 30 boxes shall be placed at the very beginning of the Segment, i.e. prior to any media data, so that 31 DASH client needs a minimal amount of parsing to detect them
- 31 DASH client needs a minimal amount of parsing to detect them.
- 32 DASH defines three events that are processed directly by a DASH client: MPD Validity Expira-
- tion, MPD Patch and MPD Update. All signal to the client that the MPD needs to be updated by
- providing the publish time of the MPD that should be used, by providing an XML patch that can
- be applied to the client's in-memory representation of MPD, or by providing a complete new MPD.
- **36** For details please see section 4.5.
- 37 User-defined events are also possible. The DASH client does not deal with them directly they
- are passed to an application, or discarded if there is no application willing or registered to process
- 39 these events. A possible client API would allow an application to register callbacks for specific

event types. Such callback will be triggered when the DASH client parses the `emsg` box in a
 Segment, or when it parses the **Event** element in the MPD.

In the ad insertion context, user-defined events can be used to signal information, such as cuemessages (e.g. SCTE 35 [50])

5 **5.1.2.4. MPD Updates**

- 6 If MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is present, the MPD can be periodically updated. These up-
- dates can be synchronous, in which case their frequency is limited by MPD@minimumUpdate Period. In case of the main live profiles MPD updates may be triggered by DASH events. Fir
- 9 details refer to section 4.5.
- When new period containing stored ads is inserted into a linear program, and there is a need to
 unexpectedly alter this period the inserted media will not carry the `emsg` boxes these will need
 to be inserted on-the-fly by proxies. In this case use of synchronous MPD updates may prove
- 13 simpler.
- MPD@publishTime provides versioning functionality: MPD with later publication times include all information that was included all MPDs with earlier publication times.

16 **5.1.2.5.** Session information

- 17 In order to allow fine-grain targeting and personalization, the identity of the client/viewer, should18 be known i.e. maintain a notion of a session.
- HTTP is a stateless protocol, however state can be preserved by the client and communicated tothe server.
- The simplest way of achieving this is use of cookies. According to RFC 6265 [37], cookies set via
 2xx, 4xx, and 5xx responses must be processed and have explicit timing and security model.

23 **5.1.2.6.** Tracking and reporting

- The simplest tracking mechanism is server-side logging of HTTP GET requests. Knowing request times and correspondence of segment names to content constitutes an indication that a certain part of the content was requested. If MPDs (or remote element entities) are generated on the fly and identity of the requester is known, it is possible to provide more precise logging. Unfortunately this is a non-trivial operation, as same user may be requesting parts of content from different CDN nodes (or even different CDNs), hence log aggregation and processing will be needed.
- Another approach is communicating with existing tracking server infrastructure using existing ex ternal standards. An IAB VAST-based implementation is shown in section 5.3.3.6.
- 32 DASH Callback events are defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 AMD3 [5], are a simple native im-
- 33 plementation of time-based impression reporting (e.g., quartiles). A callback event is a promise by
- 34 the DASH client to issue an HTTP GET request to a provided URL at a given offset from Period-
- 35 *Start*. The body of HTTP response is ignored.

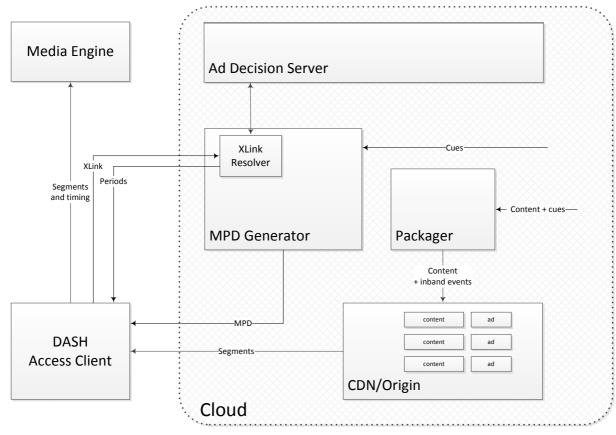
1 5.2. Architectures

The possible architectures can be classified based on the location of component that communicates with the ad decision service: a *server-based* approach assumes a generic DASH client and all communication with ad decision services done at the server side (even if this communication is triggered by a client request for a segment, remote element, or an MPD. The *app-based* approach assumes an application running on the end device and controlling one or more generic DASH clients.

- 8 Yet another classification dimension is amount of media engines needed for a presentation i.e.,
- 9 whether parallel decoding needs to be done to allow seamless transition between the main and the
- 10 inserted content, or content is conditioned well enough to make such transition possible with a
- 11 single decoder.
- 12 Workflows can be roughly classified into *linear* and *elastic*. Linear workflows (e.g., live feed from
- 13 an event) has ad breaks of known durations which have to be taken: main content will only resume
- 14 after the end of the break and the programmer / operator needs to fill them with some inserted
- 15 content. Elastic workflows assume that the duration of an ad break at a given cue location not
- 16 fixed, thus the effective break length can vary (and can be zero if a break is not taken).

1 5.3. Server-based Architecture

2 5.3.1. Introduction



3 4

Figure 8: Server-based architecture

In the server-based model, all ad-related information is expressed via MPD and segments, and ad
decisions are triggered by client requests for MPDs and for resources described in them (Segments,
remote periods).

8 The server-based model is inherently MPD-centric – all data needed to trigger ad decision is con-

9 centrated in the MPD. In case where ad break location (i.e., its start time) is unknown at the MPD10 generation time, it is necessary to rely on MPD update functionality. The two possible ways of

11 achieving these are described in 5.1.2.4.

In the live case, packager receives feed containing inband cues, such as MPEG-2 TS with SCTE
35 cue messages [50]. The packager ingests content segments into the CDN, passing manifest and

14 cue data to the ad management module. In the on demand case, cues can be provided out of band.

- 15 Ad management is located at the server side (i.e., in the cloud), thus all manifest and content con-
- 16 ditioning is done at the server side.

1 5.3.2. Mapping to DASH

2 5.3.2.1. Period elements

3 5.3.2.1.1. General

4 A single ad is expressed as a single **Period** element.

Periods with content that is expected to be interrupted as a result of ad insertion should contain explicit start times (**Period**@start), rather than durations. This allows insertion of new periods without modifying the existing periods. If a period has media duration longer then the distance between the start of this period and the start of next period, use of start times implies that a client will start the playout of the next period at the time stated in the MPD, rather than after finishing the playout of the last experiod.

- 10 the playout of the last segment.
- 11 An upcoming ad break is expressed as Period element(s), possibly remote.

12 5.3.2.1.2. Remote Period elements.

13 Remote Periods are resolved on demand into one or more than one Period elements. It is possible 14 to embed parameters from the cue message into the XLink URL of the corresponding remote pe-15 riod, in order to have them passed to the ad decision system via XLink resolver at resolution time.

- 16 In an elastic workflow, when an ad break is not taken, the remote period will be resolved into a 17 period with zero duration. This period element will contain no adaptation sets.
- 18 If a just-in-time remote Period dereferencing is required by use of @xlink:actuate="onRe-

19 quest", MPD update containing a remote period should be triggered close enough to the intended

20 splice time. This can be achieved using MPD Validity events and full-fledged MPD update, or

using MPD Patch and MPD Update events (see sec. 5.1.2.4 and 5.1.2.3). However, due to security

reasons MPD Patch and MPD Update events should only be used with great care.

In case of **Period**@xlink:actuate="onRequest", MPD update and XLink resolution should be done sufficiently early to ensure that there are no artefacts due to insufficient time given to download the inserted content. Care needs to be taken so that the client is given a sufficient amount of time to (a) request and receive MPD update, and (b) dereference the upcoming remote period.

- 28 NOTE: It may be operationally simpler to avoid use of Period@xlink:actu 29 ate="onRequest", dereferencing in case of live content.
- 30

1 5.3.2.2. Asset Identifiers

- 2 AssetIdentifier descriptors identify
- 3 the asset to which a Period belongs. This
- 4 can be used for implementation of client
- 5 functionality that depends on distinguish-
- 6 ing between ads and main content (e.g.
- 7 progress bar).
- 8 Periods with same AssetIdentifier
- 9 should have identical Adaptation Sets, Ini-
- 10 tialization Segments and same DRM infor-
- 11 mation (i.e., DRM systems, licenses). This
- 12 allows reuse of at least some initialization
- 13 data across periods of the same asset, and
- 14 ensures seamless continuation of playback
- 15 if inserted periods have zero duration. Pe-
- 16 riod continuity may be signaled.

17 5.3.2.3. MPD updates

18 MPD updates are used to implement dy-

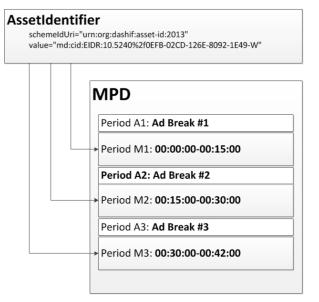


Figure 9: Using an asset identifier

- 19 namic behavior. An updated MPD may have additional (possibly remote) periods. Hence, MPD
- 20 update should be triggered by the arrival of the first cue message for an upcoming ad break. Ad
- breaks can also be canceled prior to their start, and such cancellation will also trigger an MPD
 update.
- Frequent regular MPD updates are sufficient for implementing dynamic ad insertion. Unfortunately they create an overhead of unnecessary MPD traffic ad breaks are rare events, while MPD
- 25 updates need to be frequent enough if a cue message is expected to arrive only several seconds
- 26 before the splice point. Use of HTTP conditional GET requests (i.e., allowing the server to respond
- 27 with "304 Not Modified" if MPD is unchanged) is helpful in reducing this overhead, but asynchro-
- 28 nous MPD updates avoid this overhead entirely.
- 29 DASH events with scheme "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2013" are used to trigger asynchro-30 nous MPD updates.
- The simple mapping of live inband cues in live content into DASH events is translating a singlecue into an MPD Validity expiration event (which will cause an MPD update prior to the splice
- 33 time). MPD Validity expiration events need to be sent early enough to allow the client request a
- 34 new MPD, resolve XLink (which may entail communication between the resolver and ADS), and,
- 35 finally, download the first segment of the upcoming ad in time to prevent disruption of service at
- 36 the splice point.
- 37 If several `emsg` boxes are present in a segment and one of them is the MPD Validity Expiration
 38 event, `emsg` carrying it shall always appear first.

39 5.3.2.4. MPD events

- 40 In addition to tracking events (ad starts, quartile tracking, etc.) the server may also need to signal
- 41 additional metadata to the video application. For example, an ad unit may contain not only inline

1 linear ad content (that is to be played before, during, or after the main presentation), it may also

2 contain a companion display ad that is to be shown at the same time as the video ad. It is important

3 that the server be able to signal both the presence of the companion ad and the additional tracking

4 and click-through metadata associated with the companion.

5 With that said, there is no need to have a generic DASH client implement this functionality – it is

6 enough to provide opaque information that the client would pass to an external module. Event

7 @schemeIdUri provides us with such addressing functionality, while MPD events allow us to

8 put opaque payloads into the MPD.

9 **5.3.3.** Workflows

10 In the workflows below we assume that our inputs are MPEG-2 transport streams with embedded

11 SCTE 35 cue messages [50]. In our opinion this will be a frequently encountered deployment,

12 however any other in-band or out-of-band method of getting cue messages and any other input

13 format lend themselves into the same model.

14 5.3.3.1. Linear

15 A real-time MPEG-2 TS feed arrives at both packager and MPD generator. While real-time mul-

16 ticast feeds are a very frequently encountered case, the same workflow can apply to cases such as

17 ad replacement in a pre-recorded content (e.g., in time-shifting or PVR scenarios).

18 MPD generator generates dynamic MPDs. Packager creates DASH segments out of the arriving

19 feed and writes them into the origin server. Client periodically requests the MPDs so that it has

20 enough time to transition seamlessly into the ad period.

21 Packager and MPD generator may be tightly coupled (e.g. co-located on the same physical ma-

chine), or loosely coupled as they both are synchronized only to the clock of the feed.

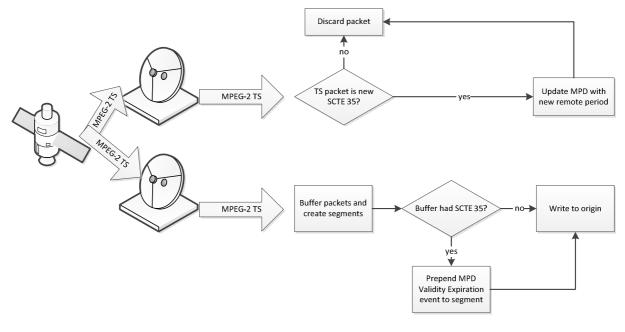




Figure 10: Live Workflow

DASH-IF Interoperability Points v3.0

1 5.3.3.1.1. Cue Interpretation by the MPD generator

When an SCTE 35 cue message indicating an upcoming splice point is encountered by the MPDgenerator, the latter creates a new MPD for the same program, adding a remote period to it.

4 The **Period**@start attribute of the inserted period has splice_time() translated into the 5 presentation timeline. Parameters derived from the cue message are inserted into the **Pe-**

6 riod@xlink:href attribute of the inserted period. Examples below show architectures that 7 allow finer targeting.

8 5.3.3.1.1.1. Example 1: Immediate ad decision

9 MPD generator keeps an up-to-date template of an MPD. At each cue message arrival, the gener-

10 ator updates its template. At each MPD request, the generator customizes the request based on the

11 information known to it about the requesting client. The generator contacts ad decision server and

12 produces one or more non-remote ad periods. In this case XLink is not needed.

13 **5.3.3.1.1.2.** Example 2: Stateful cue translation

14 MPD generator keeps an up-to-date template of an MPD. At each cue message arrival, the gener-15 ator updates its template. At each MPD request, the generator customizes the request based on the

16 information known to it about the requesting client.

17 The operator targets separately male and female audiences. Hence, the generator derives this from

18 the information it has regarding the requesting client (see 5.1.2.5), and inserts an XLink URL with

19 the query parameter ?gender=male for male viewers, and ?gender=female for the female

20 viewers.

Note that this example also showcases poor privacy practices – would such approach be imple mented, both parameter name and value should be encrypted or TLS-based communication should
 be used

24 5.3.3.1.1.3. Example 3: Stateless cue translation

At cue message arrival, the MPD generator extracts the entire SCTE 35 splice_info_sec-

tion (starting at the table_id and ending with the CRC_32) into a buffer. The buffer is then

- encoded into URL-safe base64url format according to RFC 4648 [56], and inserted into the XLink
- 28 URL of a new remote Period element. splice_time is translated into Period@start attrib-
- 29 ute. The new MPD is pushed to the origin.
- 30Note: this example is a straightforward port of the technique defined for SCTE 67 [51], but uses base64url31and not base64 encoding as the section is included in a URI.

32 **5.3.3.1.2.** Cue Interpretation by the packager

- 33 Cue interpretation by the packager is optional and is an optimization, rather than core functionality.
- 34 On reception of an SCTE 35 cue message signaling an upcoming splice, an `emsg` with MPD
- 35 Validity Expiration event is inserted into the first available segment. This event triggers an MPD
- update, and not an ad decision, hence the sum of the earliest presentation time of the `emsg`-
- 37 bearing segment and the `emsg`.presentation_time_delta should be sufficiently ear-
- 38 lier than the splice time. This provides the client with sufficient time to both fetch the MPD and
- 39 resolve XLink.

1 splice_time() of the cue message is translated into the media timeline, and last segment be-

2 fore the splice point is identified. If needed, the packager can also finish the segment at the splice3 point and thus having a segment shorter than its target duration.

4 5.3.3.1.3. Multiple cue messages

- 5 There is a practice of sending several SCTE 35 cue messages for the same splice point (e.g., the
- 6 first message announces a splice in 6 seconds, the second arrives 2 seconds later and warns about
- the same splice in 4 seconds, etc.). Both the packager and the MPD generator react on the samefirst message (the 6-sec warning in the example above), and do nothing about the following mes-
- 9 sages.

10 5.3.3.1.4. Cancelation

11 It is possible that the upcoming (and announced) insertion will be canceled (e.g., ad break needed12 to be postponed due to overtime). Cancelation is announced in a SCTE 35 cue message.

- 13 When cancelation is announced, the packager will insert the corresponding `emsg` event and the
- 14 MPD generator will create a newer version of the MPD that does not contain the inserted period
- 15 or sets its duration to zero. This implementation maintains a simpler less-coupled server side sys-
- 16 tem at the price of an increase in traffic.

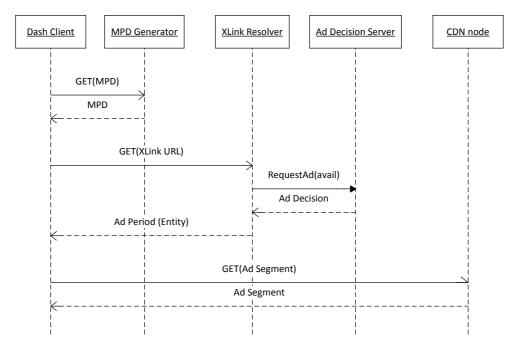
17 5.3.3.1.5. Early termination

- 18 It is also possible that a planned ad break will need to be cut short e.g., an ad will be cut short
- and there will be a switch to breaking news. The DASH translation of this would be creating an
 `emsg` at the packager and updating the MPD appropriately. Treatment of early termination here
- 20 `emsg` at the packager and updating the MPD appropriately. Treatment of early termination here
 21 would be same as treatment of a switch from main content to an ad break.
- It is easier to manipulate durations when **Period**@duration is absent and only **Period**@start is used - this way attributes already known to the DASH client don't change.

24 5.3.3.1.6. Informational cue messages

- 25 SCTE 35 can be used for purposes unrelated to signaling of placement opportunities. Examples
- of such use are content identification and time-of-day signaling. Triggering MPD validity expira tion and possibly XLink resolution in this case may be an overreaction.

1 5.3.3.1.7. Ad decision



2 3

Figure 11: Ad Decision

4 A client will attempt to dereference a remote period element by issuing an HTTP GET for the URL

5 that appears in **Period**@xlink:href. The HTTP server responding to this request (XLink re-

6 solver) will contact the ad decision service, possibly passing it parameters known from the request

7 URL and from client information available to it from the connection context. In case described in

8 5.3.3.1.1.3, the XLink resolver has access to a complete SCTE 35 message that triggered the splice.

9 The ad decision service response identifies the content that needs to be presented, and given this

10 information the XLink resolver can generate one or more Period elements that would be then re-11 turned to the requesting DASH client.

- 12 A possible optimization is that resolved periods are cached – e.g. in case of 5.3.3.1.1.1 "male" and
- 13 "female" versions of the content are only generated once in T seconds, with HTTP caching used to expire the cached periods after T seconds.
- 14

15 5.3.3.2. **On Demand**

16 In a VoD scenario, cue locations are known ahead of time. They may be available multiplexed into 17 the mezzanine file as SCTE 35 or SCTE 104, or may be provided via an out-of-band EDL.

- 18 In VoD workflows both cue locations and break durations are known, hence there is no need for a
- 19 dynamic MPD. Thus cue interpretation (which is same as in 5.3.3.1) can occur only once and result
- 20 in a static MPD that contains all remote elements with all Period elements having Pe-
- 21 **riod**@start attribute present in the MPD.

1 In elastic workflows ad durations are unknown, thus despite our knowledge of cue locations within

2 the main content it is impossible to build a complete presentation timeline. Period@duration

3 needs to be used. Remote periods should be dereferenced only when needed for playout. In case

4 of a "jump" – random access into an arbitrary point in the asset – it is a better practice not to

dereference Period elements when it is possible to determine the period from which the playout
 starts using **Period**@duration and asset identifiers. The functionality described in 5.3.3.1 is

starts using **Period**@duration and asset identifiers. The functionality described in 5.3.3.1 is
 sufficient to address on-demand cases, with the only difference that a client should be able to

8 handle zero-duration periods that are a result of avails that are not taken.

9 5.3.3.3. Capture to VoD

10 Capture to VoD use case is a hybrid between pure linear and on demand scenarios: linear content

is recorded as it is broadcast, and is then accessible on demand. A typical requirement is to havethe content available with the original ad for some time, after which ads can be replaced

13 There are two possible ways of implementing the capture-to-VoD workflow.

14 The simplest is treating capture-to-VoD content as plain VoD, and having the replacement policy

15 implemented on the XLink resolver side. This way the same Period element(s) will be always

16 returned to the same requester within the window where ad replacement is disallowed; while after

17 this window the behavior will be same as for any on-demand content. An alternative implementa-

18 tion is described in 5.3.3.4 below.

19 **5.3.3.4.** Slates and ad replacement

A content provider (e.g., OTT) provides content with ad breaks filled with its own ads. An ISP is
allowed to replace some of these with their own ads. Conceptually there is content with slates in
place of ads, but all slates can be shown and only some can be replaced.

An ad break with a slate can be implemented as a valid in-MPD Period element that also has XLink
 attributes. If a slate is replaceable, XLink resolution will result in new Period element(s), if not –
 the slate is played out.

26 **5.3.3.5.** Blackouts and Alternative content

In many cases broadcast content cannot be shown to a part of the audience due to contractual limitations (e.g., viewers located close to an MLB game will not be allowed to watch it, and will be shown some alternative content). While unrelated to ad insertion per se, this use case can be solved using the same "default content" approach, where the in-MPD content is the game and the alternative content will be returned by the XLink resolver if the latter determines (in some unspecified way) that the requester is in the blackout zone.

33 **5.3.3.6.** Tracking and reporting

34 A Period, either local or a remote entity, may contain an EventStream element with an event con-

taining IAB VAST 3.0 Ad element [49]. DASH client does not need to parse the information and

act accordingly – if there is a listener to events of this type, this listener can use the VAST 3.0 Ad
 element to implement reporting, tracking and companion ads. The processing done by this listener

38 does not have any influence on the DASH client, and same content would be presented to both

39 "vanilla" DASH client and the player in which a VAST module registers with a DASH client a

40 listener to the VAST 3.0 events.

1 An alternative implementation uses DASH Callback events. While DASH specification permits

2 both inband and MPD Callback events, inband callback events shall not be used.

3 5.3.4. Examples

4 5.3.4.1. MPD with mid-roll ad breaks and default content

In this example, a movie ("Top Gun") is shown on a linear channel and has two mid-roll ad breaks.
Both breaks have default content that will be played if the XLink resolver chooses not to return new Period element(s) or fails.

8 In case of the first ad break, SCTE 35 cue message is passed completely to the XLink resolver,9 together with the corresponding presentation time.

- 10 In case of the second ad break, proprietary parameters u and z describe the main content and the
- 11 publishing site.
- 12

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<MPD xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"</pre>
   xmlns="urn:mpeg:dash:schema:mpd:2011"
   xsi:schemaLocation="urn:mpeg:dash:schema:mpd:2011 DASH-MPD.xsd"
   type="dynamic"
   minimumUpdatePeriod="PT2S"
   timeShiftBufferDepth="PT600S"
   minBufferTime="PT2S"
   profiles="urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-live:2011"
    availabilityStartTime="2012-12-25T15:17:50">
    <BaseURL>http://cdnl.example.com/</BaseURL>
    <BaseURL>http://cdn2.example.com/</BaseURL>
    <!-- Movie -->
    <Period start="PT0.00S" duration="PT600.6S" id="movie period #1">
        <AssetIdentifier schemeIdUri="urn:org:dashif:asset-id:2013"</pre>
            value="md:cid:EIDR:10.5240%2f0EFB-02CD-126E-8092-1E49-W">
        <AdaptationSet mimeType="video/mp4" codecs="avc1.640828"
            frameRate="24000/1001" segmentAlignment="true" startWithSAP="1">
            <BaseURL>video_1/</BaseURL>
            <SegmentTemplate timescale="90000" initialization="$Band-
width%/init.mp4v"
                media="$Bandwidth$/$Number%05d$.mp4v"/>
            <Representation id="v0" width="320" height="240" bandwidth="250000"/>
            <Representation id="v1" width="640" height="480" bandwidth="500000"/>
            <Representation id="v2" width="960" height="720" bandwidth="1000000"/>
        </AdaptationSet>
    </Period>
    <!-- Mid-roll advertisement, passing base64url-coded SCTE 35 to XLink resolver -
->
    <Period duration="PT60.6S" id="ad break #1"
            xlink:href="https://adserv.com/avail.mpd?time=54054000&id=1234567&
                 cue=DAIAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAZ_I0VniQAQAgBDVUVJQAAAAH+cAAAAAA=="
            xlink:actuate="onRequest" >
        <!-- Default content, replaced by elements from remote entity -->
        <AdaptationSet mimeType="video/mp4" codecs="avc1.640828"
                       frameRate="30000/1001"
            segmentAlignment="true" startWithSAP="1">
            <BaseURL availabilityTimeOffset="INF">default_ad/</BaseURL>
```

```
<SegmentTemplate timescale="90000" initialization="$Band-
width%/init.mp4v"
               media="$Bandwidth%/$Time$.mp4v"/>
            <Representation id="v0" width="320" height="240" bandwidth="250000"/>
            <Representation id="v1" width="640" height="480" bandwidth="500000"/>
            <Representation id="v2" width="960" height="720" bandwidth="1000000"/>
       </AdaptationSet>
    </Period>
    <!--Movie, cont'd -->
    <Period duration="PT600.6S" id="movie period #2">
        <AssetIdentifier schemeIdUri="urn:org:dashif:asset-id:2013"</pre>
            value="md:cid:EIDR:10.5240%2f0EFB-02CD-126E-8092-1E49-W">
       <AdaptationSet mimeType="video/mp4" codecs="avc1.640828"
                       frameRate="24000/1001"
            segmentAlignment="true" startWithSAP="1">
            <BaseURL>video_2/</BaseURL>
            <SegmentTemplate timescale="90000" initialization="$Band-
width%/init.mp4v"
               media="$Bandwidth%/$Time$.mp4v"/>
            <Representation id="v0" width="320" height="240" bandwidth="250000"/>
            <Representation id="v1" width="640" height="480" bandwidth="500000"/>
            <Representation id="v2" width="960" height="720" bandwidth="1000000"/>
       </AdaptationSet>
    </Period>
    <!-- Mid-roll advertisement, using proprietary parameters -->
    <Period start="PT60.6S" id="ad break #2"
        xlink:href="https://adserv.com/avail.mpd?u=0EFB-02CD-126E-8092-1E49-
W&z=spam"
       xlink:actuate="onRequest" >
       <!-- Default content, replaced by elements from remote entity -->
        <AdaptationSet mimeType="video/mp4" codecs="avc1.640828"
                       frameRate="30000/1001"
            segmentAlignment="true" startWithSAP="1">
            <BaseURL availabilityTimeOffset="INF">default_ad2/</BaseURL>
            <SegmentTemplate timescale="90000" initialization="$Band-
width%/init.mp4v"
               media="$Bandwidth%/$Time$.mp4v"/>
            <Representation id="v0" width="320" height="240" bandwidth="250000"/>
            <Representation id="v1" width="640" height="480" bandwidth="500000"/>
            <Representation id="v2" width="960" height="720" bandwidth="1000000"/>
        </AdaptationSet>
    </Period>
</MPD>
```

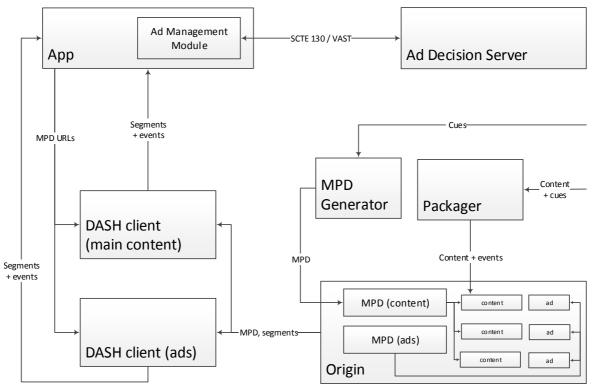


Figure 12: Example of MPD for "Top Gun" movie

2

1

2 5.4. App-based Architecture



3

4

5

Figure 13: App-based architecture

Inputs in this use case are same as the ones described in sec. 5.3. At the packaging stage, cues are
 translated into a format readable by the app or/and DASH client and are embedded into media
 segments or/and into the manifest

9 Ad management module is located at the client side. The DASH client receives manifest and seg-10 ments, with cues embedded in either one of them or in both.

11 Cue data is passed to the ad management module, which contacts the ad decision service and re-12 ceives information on content to be played. This results in an MPD for an inserted content and a

splice time at which presentation of main content is paused and presentation of the inserted contentstarts.

Note that this architecture does not assume multiple decoders – with careful conditioning it is
 possible to do traditional splicing where inserted content is passed to the same decoder. In this case

17 it is necessary to keep a player state and be able to initialize a player into this state.

18 5.4.1. Mapping to DASH

- 19 This section details mapping of elements of the reference architecture into DASH concepts per the
- 20 2nd edition of the specification (i.e., ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014).

1 5.4.1.1. MPD

Each ad decision results in a separate MPD. A single MPD contains either main content or inserted
content; existence of multiple periods or/and remote periods is possible but not essential.

4 5.4.1.2. SCTE 35 events

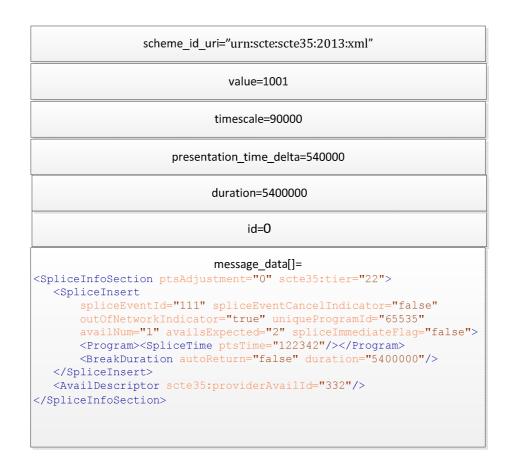
5 **5.4.1.2.1. General**

6 Cue messages are mapped into DASH events, using inband `emsg` boxes and/or in-MPD events.
7 Note that SCTE 35 cue message may not be sufficient by itself.

8 The examples below show use of SCTE 35 in user-defined events, and presentation time indicates9 the timing in within the Period.

- 10 Figure 14 below shows the content of an `emsg` box at the beginning of a segment with earliest
- 11 presentation time T. There is a 6-sec warning of an upcoming splice delta to splice time is indi-
- 12 cated as 6 seconds and duration is given as 1 minute. This means that an ad will start playing at
- 13 time T + 6 till T + 66. This example follows a practice defined in SCTE DVS 1208.

14



15 16

Figure 14 Inband carriage of SCTE 35 cue message

1 2

> Figure 15 below shows the same example with an in-MPD SCTE35 cue message. The difference is in the in-MPD event the splice time is relative to the Period start, rather than to the start of the event-carrying segment. This figure shows a one-minute ad break 10 minutes into the period.

```
<EventStream schemeIdUri="urn:scte:scte35:2013:xml">
    <Event timescale="90000" presentationTime="54054000" duration="5400000" id="1">
        <scte35:SpliceInfoSection scte35:ptsAdjustment="0" scte35:tier="22">
             <scte35:SpliceInsert
                  scte35:spliceEventId="111"
                  scte35:spliceEventCancelIndicator="false"
                  scte35:outOfNetworkIndicator="true"
                  scte35:uniqueProgramId="65535"
                  scte35:availNum="1"
                  scte35:availsExpected="2"
                  scte35:spliceImmediateFlag="false">
                  <scte35:Program>
<!-- Event timing is given by Event@presentationTime,
                                                       -->
<!-- splice_time() processing is up to the application -->
                      <scte35:SpliceTime scte35:ptsTime="122342"/>
                  </scte35:Program>
                  <scte35:BreakDuration
scte35:autoReturn="false" scte35:duration="5400000"/>
             </scte35:SpliceInsert>
             <scte35:AvailDescriptor scte35:providerAvailId="332"/>
         </scte35:SpliceInfoSection>
   </Event>
</EventStream>
```

6

Figure 15: In-MPD carriage of SCTE 35 cue message

Note: for brevity purposes SCTE 35 2014 allows use of base64-encoded section in Signal.Bi nary element as an alternative to carriage of a completely parsed cue message.

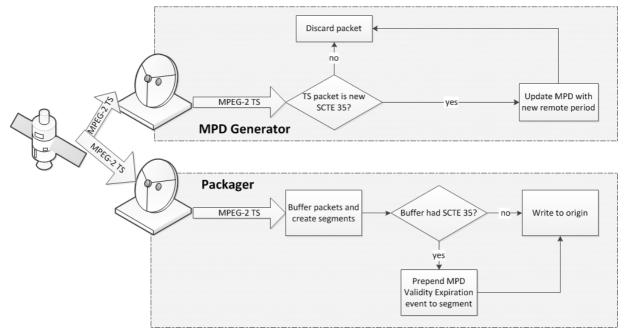
9 Normative definitions of carriage of SCTE 35 cue messages are in SCTE DVS 1202 sec 6.8.4
10 (MPD) and SCTE DVS 1208 sec 8.3.3.

11 5.4.1.3. Asset Identifiers

12 See sec. 5.3.2.2 for details.

1 5.4.2. Workflows

2 5.4.2.1. Linear



3 4

Figure 16: Linear workflow for app-driven architecture

A real-time MPEG-2 TS feed arrives at a packager. While real-time multicast feeds are a very
frequently encountered case, the same workflow can apply to cases such as ad replacement in a
pre-recorded content (e.g., in time-shifting or PVR scenarios).

8 Packager creates DASH segments out of the arriving feed and writes them into the origin server.

9 The packager translates SCTE 35 cue messages into inband DASH events, which are inserted into

10 media segments.

11 MPD generator is unaware of ad insertion functionality and the packager does the translation of

12 SCTE 35 cue messages into inband user-defined DASH events. On reception of an SCTE 35 cue

message signaling an upcoming splice, a `emsg` with a translation of the cue message in its

14 `emsg`.message_data[] field is inserted into the most recent Segment. This event triggers

15 client interaction with an ad decision server, hence the sum of the earliest presentation time of the

16 `emsg`-bearing segment and the `emsg`.presentation_time_delta should be a trans-17 lation of appliage time () into the media timeling

17 lation of splice_time() into the media timeline.

18 An alternative implementation which is more compatible with server-based architecture in section

19 5.3, an MPD generator can generate separate MPDs for both server-based and app-based architec-

tures creating remote periods for server-based and in-MPD SCTE 35 events for app-based archi-

21 tectures, while a packager can insert inband MPD validity expiration events.

22 A DASH client will pass the event to the app controlling it (e.g., via a callback registered by the

- 23 app). The app will interpret the event and communicate with the ad decision server using some
- 24 interface (e.g., VAST). This interface is out of the scope of this document.

1 The communication with ad decision service will result in an MPD URL. An app will pause the

- 2 presentation of the main content and start presentation of the inserted content. After presenting the
- 3 inserted content the client will resume presentation of the main content. This assumes either proper
- 4 conditioning of the main and inserted content or existence of separate client and decoder for in-
- 5 serted content. The way pause/resume is implemented is internal to the API of the DASH client.
- 6 Interoperability may be achieved by using the DASH MPD fragment interface, see ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4], Annex C.4.

8 5.4.2.2. On Demand

- 9 As in the server-based case, functionality defined for the live case is sufficient. Moreover, the fact
- 10 that that app-based implementation relies heavily on app's ability to pause and resume the DASH
- 11 client, support for elastic workflows is provided out of the box.
- In the on demand case, as cue locations are well-known, it is advantageous to provide a static MPD
 with SCTE 35 events than run a dynamic service that relies on inband events.

14 5.5. Extensions for ad insertion

15 5.5.1. Asset Identifiers

- AssetIdentifier descriptor shall be used for distinguishing parts of the same asset within a
 multi-period MPD, hence it shall be used for main content.
- 18 In order to enable better tracking and reporting, unique IDs should be used for different assets.
- 19 In the absence of other asset identifier schemes, a DASH-IF defined scheme may be used with the
- value of @schemeIdUri set to "urn:org:dashif:asset-id:2014". If used, the value
- of @value attribute descriptor shall be a MovieLabs ContentID URN ([54], 2.2.1) for the content.
- 22 It shall be the same for all parts of an asset. Preferred schemes are EIDR (main content) and Ad-
- **23** ID (advertising).
- If a Period has one-off semantics (i.e., an asset is completely contained in a single period, and itscontinuation is not expected in the future), the author shall not use asset identifier on these assets.
- 26 Periods that do not contain non-remote **AdaptationSet** elements, as well as zero-length peri-
- 27 ods shall not contain the **AssetIdentifier** descriptor.

28 5.5.2. Remote Periods

- An MPD may contain remote periods, some of which may have default content. Some of whichare resolved into multiple Period elements.
- 31 After dereferencing MPD may contain zero-length periods or/and remote Periods.
- 32 In case of Period@xlink:actuate="onRequest", MPD update and XLink resolution
- 33 should be done sufficiently early to ensure that there are no artefacts due to insufficient time given
- 34 to download the inserted content.

1 5.5.3. **User-defined events**

2 5.5.3.1. Cue message

3 Cue messages used in app-driven architecture shall be SCTE 35 events [50]. SCTE 35 event car-4 riage is defined in SCTE DVS 1202 (MPD) and SCTE DVS 1208 (inband). For MPD events, the 5 XML schema is defined in SCTE 35 2014 [50] and allows either XML representation or concise 6 base64-coded representation.

7

17

18

19

20 21

22

23

28

29

NOTE: PTS offset appearing in SCTE 35 shall be ignored, and only DASH event timing mechanism may be 8 used to determine splice points.

9 5.5.3.2. Reporting

10 MPD events with embedded IAB VAST 3.0 [49] response may be used for reporting purposes.

11 If only time-based reporting is required (e.g., reporting at start, completion, and quartiles), use of

12 DASH callback event may be a simpler native way of implementing tracking. Callback events are

13 defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 AMD3 [5].

14 5.5.3.3. **Ad Insertion Event Streams**

15 Recommended Event Stream schemes along with their scheme identifier for app-driven ad inser-16 tion are:

- 1. "urn:scte:scte35:2013:bin" for inband SCTE 35 events containing a complete SCTE 35 section in binary form, as defined in SCTE DVS 1208.
- 2. "urn:scte:scte35:2014:xml+bin" for MPD SCTE 35 events containing only base64 cue message representation, as defined in SCTE DVS 1202.
 - NOTE: the content of Event element is an XML representation of the complete SCTE 35 cue message, that contains signal.Binary element rather than the signal.spliceInfoSection element, both defined in SCTE 35 2014.
- 24 3. "urn:dashif:org:vast30:2014" for VAST3.0 [49].

Interoperability Aspects 5.6. 25

5.6.1. Server-based Ad insertion 26

- 27 For server-based ad insertion, the following aspects needs to be taken into account:
 - Service offerings claiming conformance to server-based ad insertion shall follow the re-٠ quirements and guidelines for service offerings in sections 5.3.2, 5.5.1, and 5.5.2.
- 30 Clients claiming conformance to server-based ad insertion shall follow shall follow the ٠ requirements and guidelines for clients in section 5.3.2, 5.5.1, and 5.5.2. 31

32 5.6.2. **App-based Ad Insertion**

33 For app-based ad insertion, the logic for ad insertion is outside the scope of the DASH client. The tools defined in section 5.4 and 5.5 may be used to create an interoperable system that includes 34

DASH-based delivery and ad insertion logic. 35

36

6. Media Coding Technologies

2 6.1. Introduction

In addition to DASH-specific constraints, DASH-IF IOPs also adds restrictions on media codecs
and other technologies. This section provides an overview on technologies for different media
components and how they fit into the DASH-related aspects of DASH-IF IOPs.

6 6.2. Video

7 6.2.1. General

8 The codec considered for basic video support up to 1280 x 720p at 30 fps is H.264 (AVC) Pro9 gressive High Profile Level 3.1 decoder [9]. This choice is based on the tradeoff between content
10 availability, support in existing devices and compression efficiency.

11 Further, it is recognized that certain clients may only be capable to operate with H.264/AVC "Pro-

gressive" Main Profile Level 3.0 and therefore content authors may provide and signal a specific

13 subset of DASH-AVC/264.

14 Notes

17

18

- H.264 (AVC) Progressive High Profile Level 3.1 decoder [9] can also decode any content that conforms to
 - H.264 (AVC) Constrained Baseline Profile up to Level 3.1
 - H.264 (AVC) "Progressive" Main Profile up to Level 3.1.
- H.264 (AVC) H.264/AVC "Progressive" Main Profile Level 3.0 decoder [9] can also decode any content that conforms to H.264 (AVC) Constrained Baseline Profile up to Level 3.0.
- Further, the choice for HD extensions up to 1920 x 1080p and 30 fps is H.264 (AVC) Progressive
 High Profile Level 4.0 decoder [9].
- 24 The High Efficiency Video Coding (HEVC) resulted from a joint video coding standardization
- project of the ITU-T Video Coding Experts Group (ITU-T Q.6/SG 16) and ISO/IEC Moving Picture Experts Group (ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 29/WG 11). The final specification is available here [20].
- 27 Additional background information may be found at http://hevc.info.
- 28 The DASH-IF is interested in providing Interoperability Points and Extensions for established co-29 dec configurations. It is not the intent of the DASH-IF to define typically deployed HEVC pro-30 files/levels or the associated source formats. However, at the same time it is considered to provide
- 31 implementation guidelines supported by test material for DASH-based delivery as soon as the
- 32 industry has converged to profile/level combinations in order to support a dedicated format. For
- 33 this version of this document the following is considered:
- For HEVC-based video, it is expected that the minimum supported format is 720p. The codec considered to support up to 1280 x 720p at 30 fps is HEVC Main Profile Main Tier Level 3.1 [20].

- The choice for 8-bit HD extensions based on HEVC to support up to 2048 x 1080 and 60 fps is HEVC Main Profile Main Tier Level 4.1 [20].
 - The choice for 10-bit HD extensions based on HEVC to support up to 2048 x 1080 and 60 fps and 10 bit frame depth is HEVC Main10 Profile Main Tier Level 4.1 [20].
- 5 Other profile/level combinations will be considered in updated versions of this document.

6 6.2.2. DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video

- For the integration of the above-referred codecs in the context of DASH, the following applies forH.264 (AVC):
- 9 The encapsulation of H.264/MPEG-4 AVC video data is based on the ISO BMFF as defined in ISO/IEC 14496-15 [10].
- Clients shall to support H.264/AVC sample entries when SPS/PPS is provided in the Initialization Segment only according to ISO/IEC 14496-15, [10], i.e. sample entry 'avc1'.
- Clients shall support Inband Storage for SPS/PPS based ISO/IEC 14496-15, [10], i.e. sample entry 'avc3'.
- Service offerings using H.264/AVC may use sample entry 'avc1' or 'avc3'.
- SAP types 1 and 2 correspond to IDR-frames in [9].
- The signaling of the different video codec profile and levels for the codecs parameters according to RFC6381 [11] is documented in Table 14. Note that any of the codecs present in Table 2 conforms to the profile level combination that is supported in DASH-AVC/264.
- Additional constraints within one Adaptation Set are provided in section 6.2.5.
- Note: For a detailed description on how to derive the signaling for the codec profile for H.264/AVC, please refer to DVB DASH, section 5.1.3.

23

3

4

Table 14 H.264 (AVC) Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [11]

| Profile | Le vel | Codec Parameter |
|---|-----------|-----------------|
| H.264 (AVC) "Progressive" Main Profile | 3.0 | avc[1,3].4DY01E |
| H.264 (AVC) Progressive | 3.1 | avc[1,3].64Y01F |
| High Profile | 4.0 | avc[1,3].64Y028 |

24

25 6.2.3. DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video

26 For the integration in the context of DASH, the following applies for HEVC

| 1 2 3 | • | The encapsulation of HEVC video data in ISO BMFF is defined in ISO/IEC 14496-15 [10]. Clients shall support both sample entries ' using 'hvc1' and 'hev1', i.e., inband Storage for VPS/SPS/PPS. |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| 4 | • | Additional constraints within one Adaptation Set are provided in section 6.2.5. |
| 5 6 7 8 9 | • | IDR pictures with nal_unit_type equal to IDR_N_LP and IDR_W_RADL are mapped to SAP types 1 and 2, respectively. BLA pictures with nal_unit_type equal to BLA_N_LP and BLA_W_RADL are mapped to SAP types 1 and 2, respectively. BLA pictures with nal_unit_type equal to BLA_W_LP are mapped to SAP type 2. CRA pictures with nal_unit_type equal to CRA_NUT are mapped to SAP type 3. |
| 10 11 12 | • | The signaling of the different video codec profile and levels for the codecs parameters is according to ISO/IEC 14496-15 [10] Annex E. Note that any of the codecs present in Table 1 conforms to the profile level combination that is supported in DASH-HEVC. |

- NOTE: For a detailed description on how to derive the signaling for the codec profile for H.264/AVC, please refer to DVB DASH, section 5.2.2.
- 15

13

14

Table 15 Codecs parameter according to ISO/IEC 14496-15 [10]

| Profile | Level | Tier | Codec Parameter |
|--------------|-------|------|--------------------------------------|
| HEVC Main | 3.1 | Main | hev1.1.2.L93.B0 hvc1.1.2.L93.B0 |
| | 4.1 | Main | hev1.1.2.L123.B0 hvc1.12.L123.B0 |
| HEVC Main-10 | 4.1 | Main | hev1.2.4.L123.B0 hvc1.2.4.L123.B0 |

16 6.2.4. Video Metadata

17 The provisioning of video metadata in the MPD is discussed in section 3.2.4.

18 6.2.5. Adaptation Sets Constraints

19 6.2.5.1. General

20 Video Adaptation Sets shall contain Representations that are alternative encodings of the same 21 source content. Video Adaptation Sets may contain Representations encoded at lower resolutions 22 that are exactly divisible subsamples of the source image size. As a result, the cropped vertical 23 and horizontal sample counts of all Representations can be scaled to a common display size without position shift or aspect ratio distortion that would be visible during adaptive switching. Sub-24 25 sample ratios must result in integer values for the resulting encoded sample counts (without rounding or truncation). The encoded sample count shall scale to the source video's exact active image 26 aspect ratio when combined with the encoded sample aspect ratio value aspect_ratio_idc 27 28 stored in the video Sequence Parameter Set NAL. Only the active video area shall be encoded so that devices can frame the height and width of the encoded video to the size and shape of their 29

 currently selected display area without extraneous padding in the decoded video, such as "letterbox bars" or "pillarbox bars".

3 All decoding parameter sets referenced by NALs in a Representation using 'avc1' or 'hvc1' sample 4 description shall be indexed to that track's sample description table and decoder configuration 5 record in the 'avcC' or 'hvcC' box contained in its Initialization Segment. All decoding param-6 eter sets referenced by NALs in a Representation using 'avc3' or 'hev1' sample description shall 7 be indexed to a Sequence Parameter NAL (SPS) and Picture Parameter NAL (PPS) stored prior to 8 the first video sample in that Media Segment. For 'avc3' and 'hev1' sample description Repre-9 sentations, the SPS and PPS NALs stored in 'avcC' or 'hvcC' in the Initialization Segment shall 10 only be used for decoder and display initialization, and shall equal the highest Tier, Profile, and 11 Level of any SPS in the Representation. SPS and PPS stored in each Segment shall be used for 12 decoding and display scaling.

13 For all Representations within an Adaptation Set with the following parameters shall apply.

- All the Initialization Segments for Representations within an Adaptation Set shall have the same sample description codingname. For example the inclusion of 'avc1' and 'avc3'
 based Representations within an Adaptation Set or the inclusion 'avc1' and 'hev1' based
 Representations within an Adaptation Set is not permitted.
- All Representations shall have equal timescale values in all @timescale attributes and
 'tkhd' timescale fields in Initialization Segments.
- If 'avc1' or 'hvc1' sample description is signaled in the AdaptationSet@codecs
 attribute, an edit list may be used to synchronize all Representations to the presentation
 timeline, and the edit offset value shall be equal for all Representations.
- 23 Representations in one Adaptation Set shall not differ in any of the following parameters: • 24 Color Primaries, Transfer Characteristics and Matrix Coefficients. If Adaptation Sets differ 25 in any of the above parameters, these parameters should be signaled on Adaptation Set 26 level. If signaled, a Supplemental or Essential Property descriptor shall be used, with the 27 @schemeIdURI set to urn:mpeq:mpeqB:cicp:<Parameter> as defined in 28 ISO/IEC 23001-8 [45] and <Parameter> one of the following: ColourPrimaries, 29 TransferCharacteristics, Or MatrixCoefficients. The @value attribute 30 shall be set as defined in ISO/IEC 23001-8 [45].

31 6.2.5.2. Bitstream Switching

- For AVC and HEVC video data, if the @bitstreamswitching flag is set to true, then thefollowing additional constraints shall apply:
- All Representations shall be encoded using `avc3' sample description for AVC or
 `hev1' for HEVC, and all IDR pictures shall be preceded by any SPS and PPS NAL decoding parameter referenced by a video NAL in that codec video sequence.
- Note: NAL parameter indexes in a Media Segment are scoped to that Segment. NALs and
 indexes in the Initialization Segment may be different, and are only used for decoder initialization, not Segment decoding.

| 1 2 3 4 5 | • | All Representations within a video Adaptation Set shall include an Initialization Segment containing an 'avcC' or 'hvcC' Box containing a Decoder Configuration Record containing SPS and PPS NALs that equal the highest Tier, Profile, Level, vertical and horizontal sample count of any Media Segment in the Representation. HEVC Decoder Configuration Records shall also include a VPS NAL. |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| 6 7 | • | The AdaptationSet@codecs attribute shall be present and equal the maximum pro- file and level of any Representation contained in the Adaptation Set. |
| 8 9 | • | The Representation @codecs attribute may be present and in that case shall equal the maximum profile and level of any Segment in the Representation. |
| 10 | • | Edit lists shall not be used to synchronize video to audio and presentation timelines. |
| 11 12 13 14 | • | Video Media Segments shall set the first presented sample's composition time equal to the first decoded sample's decode time, which equals the baseMediaDecodeTime in the Track Fragment Decode Time Box ('tfdt'). |
| 15 16 17 | | Note: This requires the use of negative composition offsets in a v1 Track Run Box ('trun') for video samples, otherwise video sample reordering will result in a delay of video relative to audio. |
| 18 19 20 21 22 23 | • | The AdaptationSet @presentationTimeOffset attribute shall be sufficient to align audio video, subtitle, and presentation timelines at presentation a Period's presentation start time. Any edit lists present in Initialization Segments shall be ignored. It is strongly recommended that the Presentation Time Offset at the start of each Period coincide with the first frame of a Segment to improve decoding continuity at the start of Periods. |
| 24 25 | | DTE: An Adaptation Set with the attribute AdaptationSet@bitstreamSwitching="true" fulfills e requirements of the DVB DASH specification [38]. |

26 See section 7.5 for additional Adaptation Set constraints related to content protection.

27 6.3. Audio

28 6.3.1. General

Content offered according to DASH-AVC/264 IOP is expected to contain an audio component in
 most cases. Therefore, clients consuming DASH-AVC/264-based content are expected to support
 stereo audio. Multichannel audio support and support for additional codecs is defined in extensions
 in section 9 of this document.

- 33 The codec for basic stereo audio support is MPEG-4 High Efficiency AAC v2 Profile, level 2 [12].
- 34 Notes
- HE-AACv2 is also standardized as Enhanced aacPlus in 3GPP TS 26.401 [14].
- HE-AACv2 Profile decoder [9] can also decode any content that conforms to
- 37
- MPEG-4 AAC Profile [12]

1 o MPEG-4 HE-AAC Profile [12]

2 Therefore, Broadcasters and service providers encoding DASH-AVC/264 content are free to use
3 any AAC version. It is expected that clients supporting the DASH-AVC/264 interoperability point
4 will be able to play AAC-LC, HE-AAC and HE-AACv2 encoded content.

- For all HE-AAC and HE-AACv2 bitstreams, explicit backwards compatible signaling should beused to indicate the use of the SBR and PS coding tools.
- Note: To conform to the DVB DASH profile [38], explicit backwards compatible signaling
 shall be used to indicate the use of the SBR and PS coding tools.
- 9 For advanced audio technologies, please refer to section 9.

10 6.3.2. DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio

- 11 In the context of DASH, the following applies for the High Efficiency AAC v2 Profile
- The content should be prepared according to the MPEG-DASH Implementation Guidelines
 [7] to make sure each (Sub)Segment starts with a SAP of type 1.
- The signaling of MPEG-4 High Efficiency AAC v2 for the codecs parameters is according to IETF RFC6381 [11] and is documented in Table 16. Table 16 also provides information on the ISO BMFF encapsulation.
- 17

Table 16 HE-AACv2 Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [11]

| Codec | Codec Parame- ter | ISO BMFF Encapsulation | SAP type |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|----------|
| MPEG-4 AAC Profile [12] | mp4a.40.2 | ISO/IEC 14496-14 [13] | 1 |
| MPEG-4 HE- AAC Profile [12] | mp4a.40.5 | ISO/IEC 14496-14 [13] | 1 |
| MPEG-4 HE- AAC v2 Profile [12] | mp4a.40.29 | ISO/IEC 14496-14 [13] | 1 |

Note: Since both, HE-AAC and HE-AACv2 are based on AAC-LC, for the above-mentioned "Co dec Parameter" the following is implied:

20

• mp4a.40.5 = mp4a.40.2 + mp4a.40.5

21

• mp4a.40.29 = mp4a.40.2 + mp4a.40.5 + mp4a.40.29

- 22 6.3.3. Audio Metadata
- 23 6.3.3.1. General
- 24 Metadata for audio services is defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1.

1 6.3.3.2. ISO/IEC 23009-1 audio data

2 With respect to the audio metadata, the following elements and attributes from ISO/IEC 23009-13 are relevant:

- the @audioSamplingRate attribute for signaling the sampling rate of the audio media
 component type in section 5.3.7 of ISO/IEC 23009-1
 - the **AudioChannelConfiguration** element for signaling audio channel configuration of the audio media component type.in section 5.3.7 of ISO/IEC 23009-1.

8 6.4. Auxiliary Components

9 6.4.1. Introduction

6

7

Beyond regular audio and video support, TV programs typically also require support for auxiliary
 components such as subtitles and closed captioning, often due to regulatory requirements. DASH AVC/264 provides tools to addresses these requirements.

13 6.4.2. Subtitles and Closed Captioning

- 14 Technologies for subtitles are as follows:
- CEA-708 Digital Television (DTV) Closed Captioning [15]
- W3C TTML [17] and the SMPTE profile on SMPTE Timed Text [18]. Graphics-based subtitles and closed captioning are also supported by SMPTE Timed Text [18].
- **18** 3GPP Timed Text [16]
- 19 Web VTT [19]
- W3C subtitles Internet Media and Subtitles [19].
- 21 For simple cases, CEA-608/708 based signaling as defined in section 6.4.3 may be used.
- For any other use cases, W3C TTML [17] and the SMPTE profile on SMPTE Timed Text [18]should be used as defined in section 6.4.4.

24 6.4.3. CEA-608/708 in SEI messages

25 6.4.3.1. Background

26 In order to provide the signaling of the presence of SEI-based data streams and closed captioning

- 27 services on MPD level, descriptors on DASH level are defined. This section provides some back-28 ground.
- Note: This method is compatible with draft SCTE specification and therefore SCTE URNs
 are used for the descriptor @schemeIdURI. In an updated version of this document more
- 31 details on the exact relation to the SCTE specification will be provided.
- 32 The presence of captions and their carriage within the SEI message of a video track is defined in
- **33** ANSI/SCTE 128-1 2013 [39], section 8.1 Encoding and transport of caption, active format de-
- 34 scription (AFD) and bar data.

| 1 2 3 | Based on this it is enabled that a video track carries SEI message that carry CEA-608/708 CC. The SEI message payload_type=4 is used to indicates that Rec. ITU-T T.35 based SEI messages are in use. |
|----------------|---|
| 4 | In summary the following is included in ANSI/SCTE 128-1 2013 to signal CEA-608/708 CC: |
| 5 | • SEI payloadType is set to 4□ |
| 6 | • itu_t_t35_country_code - A fixed 8-bit field, the value of which shall be 0xB5. |
| 7 8 | • itu_t_35_provider_code - A fixed 16-bit field registered by the ATSC. The value shall be 0x0031. |
| 9 10 | • user_identifier - This is a 32 bit code that indicates the contents of the user_structure() and is 0x47413934 ("GA94"). |
| 11 12 | • user_structure() – This is a variable length data structure ATSC1_data() defined in section 8.2 of ANSI/SCTE 128 2013-a.□ |
| 13 14 | • user_data_type_code is set to 0x03 for indicating captioning data in the user_data_type_structure()□ |
| 15 16 | • user_data_type_structure () is defined in section 8.2.2 of ANSI/SCTE 128 2013 for Closed Captioning and defines the details on how to encapsulate the captioning data.□ |
| 17 | The semantics of relevant Caption Service Metadata is provided in CEA-708 [15], section 4.5: |
| 18 | • the total number of caption services (1-16) present over some transport-specific period. |
| 19 | • For each service: |
| 20 21 22 | • The type of the service, i.e. being 608 or 708. According to CEA-708 [15], section 4.5, there shall be at most one CEA-608 data stream signaled. The CEA-608 datastream itself signals the individual CEA-608-E caption channels. |
| 23 24 | • When the type of the service is 708, then the following 708-related metadata should be conveyed: |
| 25 26 27 | SERVICE NUMBER: the service number as found on the 708 caption service block header (1-31). This field provides the linkage of the remaining metadata to a specific 708 caption service |
| 28 29 | LANGUAGE: the dominant language of the caption service, recommended to be encoded from ISO 639.2/B [41]. |
| 30 31 | DISPLAY ASPECT RATIO {4:3, 16:9}: The display aspect ratio assumed by the caption authoring in formatting the caption windows and contents. |
| 32 33 | EASY READER: this metadata item, when present, indicates that the service contains text tailored to the needs of beginning readers. |
| 34 | 6.4.3.2. MPD-based Signaling of SEI-based CEA-608/708 Closed Caption services |
| 35 | This subsection provides methods MPD-based Signaling of SEI-based CEA-608/708 Closed Cap- |

This subsection provides methods MPD-based Signaling of SEI-based CEA-608/708 Closed Cap tion services, i.e.

- 1 The presence of one or several SEI-based closed caption services in a Representation.
 - The signaling of the relevant Caption Service Metadata as defined in CEA-708 [15], section 4.5.
- 2 3
- 4 The descriptor mechanism in DASH is used for this purpose.

Signaling is provided by including Accessibility descriptors, one each for CEA 608 and CEA
708 and is described in sections 6.4.3.3 and 6.4.3.4, respectively. The Accessibility descriptor is included for the AdaptationSet and all included Representations shall provide
equivalent captions.

9 The @value attribute of each descriptor can be either list of languages or a complete map of 10 services (or CC channels, in CEA-608 terminology). Listing languages without service or channel

11 information is strongly discouraged if more than one caption service is present.

12 6.4.3.3. Signaling CEA-608 caption service metadata

13 The Accessibility descriptor shall be provided with @schemeIdURI set to 14 urn:scte:dash:cc:cea-608:2015, and an optional @value attribute to describe the cap-15 tions. If the @value attribute is not present, the Representation contains a CEA-608 based closed 16 captioning service.

17 If present, the @value attribute shall contain a description of caption service(s) provided in the
18 stream as a list of channel-language pairs. Alternatively, a simple list of language codes may be

19 provided, but this is strongly discouraged as it will not provide sufficient information to map the

20 language with the appropriate caption channel.

21 The @value syntax shall be as described in the ABNF below.

| 22 | @value | <pre>= (channel *3 [";" channel]) / (language *3[";" language])</pre> |
|----|----------------|---|
| 23 | channel | = channel-number "=" language |
| 24 | channel-number | = CC1 CC2 CC3 CC4 |
| 25 | language | = 3ALPHA ; language code per ISO 639.2/B [41] |

26 6.4.3.4. Signaling CEA-708 caption service metadata

The Accessibility descriptor shall be provided with the @schemeIdURI set to urn:scte:dash:cc:cea-708:2015, and an optional @value attribute to describe the captions. If the @value attribute is not present, the Representation contains a CEA-708 based closed captioning service.

If present, the @value shall contain the Caption Service Metadata as provided in CEA-708 [15], section 4.5 as a semicolon-separated string of service descriptions. Each service description is a list of colon-separated name-value pairs. Alternatively, a simple list of language codes may be provided, but this is strongly discouraged as it will not provide sufficient information to map the language with the appropriate caption service. The @value syntax shall be as described in the ABNF below.

| | | = | service *15 [";" | service] / | / | (language | *15[";" | language]) |
|----|---------|---|-------------------|------------|---|-----------|-----------------|------------|
| 38 | service | = | service-number "= | " param | | | | |

```
service-number = (%d1 - %d63) ; decimal numbers 1 through 63
param = "lang" ":" language[","easy-reader][","aspect-ratio]
language = 3ALPHA; language code per ISO 639.2/B
easy-reader = "er" ":" BIT ; default value 0
wide-aspect-ratio = "war" ":" BIT ; default value 1 (16:9), 0 for 4:3
NOTE: ALPHA and BIT are as defined by IETF RFC 5234 [43], Appendix B.1.
```

7

8

The following parameters are defined for signaling CEA-708 metadata:

| Name | Value | Comments |
|------|---|---|
| lang | LANG | LANGUAGE code (see above) |
| war | Aspect ratio of the service. | The value may be either "4:3" (set to 0) or "16:9" (set to 1). |
| er | EasyReader presence ('1' if present, '0' if not). | If not present, 0 is assumed |

9 Each of the Service parameters (except for language) may be present or not present. Default

10 values can be assumed where specified.

11 6.4.3.5. Examples

Simple signaling of presence of CEA-608 based closed caption service (Note: Not signaling lan-guages is a discouraged practice)

```
14 <Accessibility
15 schemeIdUri="urn:scte:dash:cc:cea-608:2015"/>
```

16 Signaling of presence of CEA-608 closed caption service languages in English and German

```
17 <Accessibility
18 schemeIdUri="urn:scte:dash:cc:cea-608:2015"
19 value="eng;deu"/>
```

Signaling of presence of CEA-608 closed caption service in English and German, with channelassignments

```
22 <Accessibility
23 schemeIdUri="urn:scte:dash:cc:cea-608:2015"
24 value="CC1=eng;CC3=deu"/>
```

25 Signaling of presence of CEA-708 closed caption service in English and German

```
26 <Accessibility
27 schemeIdUri="urn:scte:dash:cc:cea-708:2015"
28 value="1=lang:eng;2=lang:deu"/>
```

29 Signaling of presence of CEA-708 closed caption service in English and easy reader English

```
1 <Accessibility
2 schemeIdUri="urn:scte:dash:cc:cea-708:2015"
3 value="1=lang:eng;2=lang:eng,war:1,er:1"/>
```

4 6.4.4. SMPTE Timed Text

W3C TTML [17] and the SMPTE profile on SMPTE Timed Text [18] provide a rich feature set
for subtitles. Beyond basic subtitles and closed captioning, for example, graphics-based subtitles
and closed captioning are also supported by SMPTE Timed Text [18]. Conversion of CEA-608
and CEA-708 into SMPTE TT may be done according to SPMTE 2052-10 [23] and SMPTE-205211 [24], respectively. Note that by the choice of SMPTE TT as the supported format at the client,
other formats such as EBU TT [21] are also supported as long as only the subset that is also supported by SMPTE TT is used in the content authoring.

- 12 In the context of DASH, the following applies for text/subtitling:
- All graphics type samples are SAP type 1.
- The signalling of the different text/subtitling codecs for the codecs parameters is according to RFC6381 [11] and is documented in Table 17. Table 17 also provides information on ISO BMFF encapsulation.
- For live services, encapsulation in ISO BMFF is definitely necessary. However, for On Demand cases, the full file of subtitles may be provided as XML data only.
- 19

Table 17 Subtitle Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [11]

| Codec | MIME type | Codec Pa- rameter @codecs | ISO BMFF Encapsula- tion |
|--|--|---------------------------------|---|
| SMPTE Timed Text [18] with- out encapsula- tion | applica- tion/ttml+xml ^(1,3) | not pre- sent | n/a |
| SMPTE Timed Text [18] with ISO BMFF en- capsulation | application/mp4 | stpp ^(2,3) | ISO/IEC 14496-12 [8] ISO/IEC 14496-30 [25] |
| Notes: | | | |

(1) the MIME type is generic for TTML based timed text and not specific to SMPTE-TT (for example, DVB DASH is using the same MIME type to signal EBU-TT). For details on the used format, parsing of the XML document is necessary. Nevertheless, it is expected that a generic TTML-based parser can decode and render any type of TTML-based subtitles

(2) the sample entry `stpp' is generic for TTML based timed text and not specific to SMPTE-TT (for example, DVB DASH is using 'stpp' to signal EBU-TT). For details on the used format, parsing

of the subtitle sample entry **schema_location** parameter is necessary. Nevertheless, it is expected that a generic TTML-based parser can decode and render any type of TTML-based subtitles.

(3) DVB DASH only supports ISO BMFF encapsulated TT, but not XML-based.

1 6.4.5. Annotation of Subtitles

2 Subtitles should be annotated properly using descriptors available in ISO/IEC 23009-1, Specifi-

3 cally Role, Accessibility, Essential Property and Supplemental Property descriptors and the DASH

4 role scheme may be used. Guidelines for annotation are for example provided in DVB DASH,

5 section 7.1.2 or SCTE-DVS 1202, section 7.2.

6 7. Content Protection Related Aspects

7 7.1. Introduction

8 DASH-AVC/264 does not intend to specify a full end-to-end DRM system. However DASH-

9 AVC/264 provides a framework for multiple DRMs to protect DASH content by adding instruc-

10 tions or *Protection System Specific*, proprietary information in predetermined locations in MPDs,

11 or DASH content that is encrypted with Common Encryption as defined in ISO/IEC 23001-7 [26].

12 The Common Encryption ('cenc') protection scheme specifies encryption parameters that can be

13 applied by a scrambling system and key mapping methods using a common key identifier (KID)

14 to be used by different DRM systems such that the same encrypted version of a file can be com-

bined with different DRM systems that can store proprietary information for licensing and key

16 retrieval in the Protection System Specific Header Box ('pssh'), or in **ContentProtection**

- 17 Descriptors in an MPD. The DRM scheme for each pssh is identified by a DRM specific Sys-18 temTD
- 18 temID.

19 The recommendations in this document reduce the encryption parameters and use of the encryption20 metadata to specific use cases for VOD and live content with key rotation.

21 The base technologies are introduced first followed by informative chapter on standardized ele-

- 22 ments. Additional Content Protection Constraints are then listed that are specific to conformance
- to DASH-264/AVC IOP.

24 7.2. Base Technologies Summary

- The normative standard that defines common encryption in combination with ISO BMFF is
 ISO/IEC 23001-7:2014 2nd Ed., CENC [26]. It includes:
- Common Encryption of NAL structure video and other media data with AES-128 CTR mode
- Support for decryption of a single Representation by multiple DRM systems
- Key rotation (changing media keys over time)
- XML syntax for expressing a default KID attribute and pssh element in MPDs

32 The main DRM components are:

- The ContentProtection descriptors in the MPD (see [5] 5.3.7.2-Table 9, 5.8.5.2 and
 [5][1] 5.8.4.1) that contains the URI for signaling of the use of Common Encryption or the
 specific DRM being used.
- 2. 'tenc' parameters that specify encryption parameters and default_KID (see [26]
 8.2.1). The 'tenc' information is in the Initialization Segment. Any KIDs in Movie Fragment sample group description boxes override the 'tenc' parameter of the default_KID, as well as the 'not encrypted' parameter. Keys referenced by KID in sample group descriptions must be available when samples are available for decryption, and may be stored in a protection system specific header box ('pssh') in each movie fragment box ('moof'). The default_KID information may also appear in the MPD (see [26] 11.1).
- 3. 'senc' parameters that may store initialization vectors and subsample encryption ranges.
 The 'senc' box is stored in each track fragment box ('traf') of an encrypted track (see [21] 7.1), and the stored parameters accessed using the sample auxiliary information offset box ('saio') and the sample auxiliary information size box ('saiz') (see [4] 8.7.8 and 8.7.9).
- 4. 'pssh' license acquisition data or keys for each DRM in a format that is "Protection System Specific". 'pssh' refers to the Protection System Specific Header box described in [26], 8.1.2. 'pssh' boxes may be stored in Initialization or Media Segments (see [26] 8.1 and 8.2). It may also be present in a cenc:pssh element in the MPD (see [5] 5.8.4.1, [26] 11.2.1). cenc:pssh information in the MPD increases the MPD size but may allow faster parsing, earlier access and addition of DRMs without content modification.
 - 5. Key rotation is mainly used to allow changes in entitlement for continuous live content. It is used as defined in [26] with the following requirements:

22

23

24

25

26 27

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

- In the initialization segment, the movie box ('moov') contains a Track Encryption Box ('tenc') and may contain a 'pssh' box for each DRM e.g. to store root license acquisition information for authentication and authorization.
- Sample To Group Box (`sbgp') and Sample Group Description Box (`sgpd') of type 'seig' are used to indicate the KID applied to each sample, and changes to KIDs over time (i.e. "key rotation"). (see [4] 8.9.4) KIDs referenced by sample groups must have the keys corresponding to those KIDs available when the samples in a Segment are available for decryption. Keys referenced by sample groups in a Segment may be stored in that Segment in Protection System Specific Header Boxes (`pssh') stored in the Movie Fragment Box (`moof'). A version 1 `pssh' box may be used to list the KID values stored to enable removal of duplicate boxes if a file is defragmented.
- Keys stored in Media Segment 'pssh' boxes must be stored in the same DRM format for all users so that the same Media Segments can be shared by all users. User-specific information must be delivered "out of band", as in a "root" license associated with the default_KID, which can be individualized for each DRM

client, and control access to the shared `pssh' information stored in Media Segments, e.g. by encrypting the keys stored in Segment `pssh' boxes with a "root key" provided by the user-specific DRM root license. Common Encryption specifies `pssh' to enable key storage in movie fragments/Segments; but it does not preclude other methods of key delivery that satisfy KID indexing and availability requirements.

7 7.3. ISO BMFF Support for Common Encryption and DRM

8 The ISO Media Format carries content protection information in different locations. Their hierar9 chy is explained in the informational chapter below, followed by a reference on where these ele10 ments are standardized.

11 7.3.1. Box Hierarchy

1 2

3

4

5

6

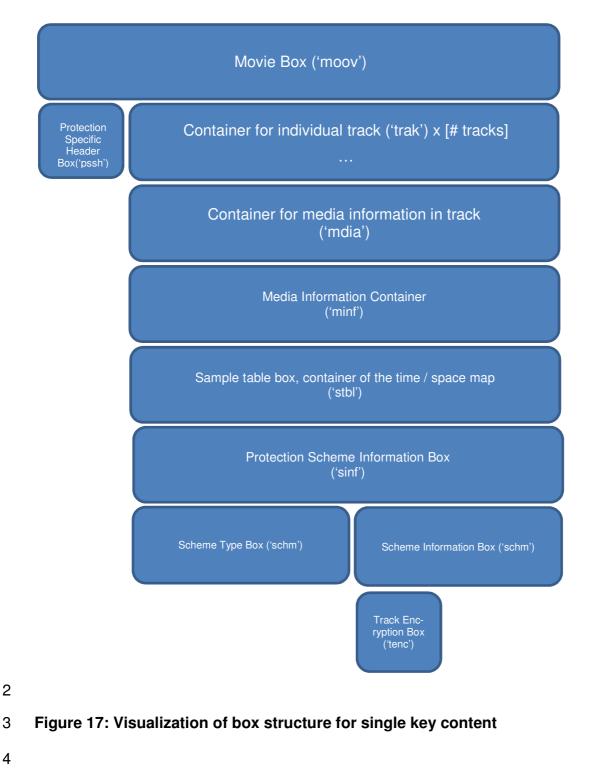
12 The following shows the box hierarchy and composition for relevant boxes, when using common13 encryption:

| 14 | • moov/pssh (zero or o | one per system ID) |
|----------|---|---|
| 15 | moov/trak/mdia/minf/stbl/stsd/sinf/schm | (one, if encrypted) |
| 16 | • moov/trak/mdia/minf/stbl/stsd/sinf/schi/tenc | (one, if encrypted) |
| 17 | • moof/traf/saiz | (one, if encrypted) |
| 18 | • moof/traf/saio | (one, if encrypted) |
| 19 | • moof/traf/senc | (one, if encrypted) |
| 20 | for key rotation | |
| 21 22 | | e per sample group) ne per sample group) |

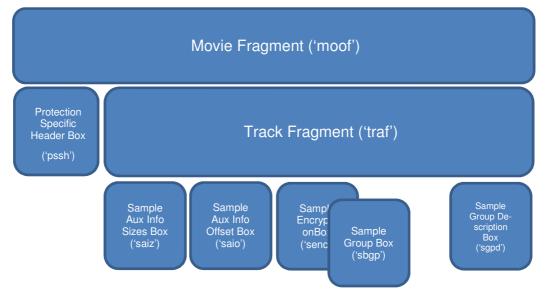
23 • moof/pssh

(zero or one per system ID)

Graphical overview of above structure for VOD content is shown in the figure below



Graphical overview of box structure for live content is shown in the figure below



2

1

3

Figure 18: Visualization of box structure with key rotation

4 7.3.2. ISO BMFF Structure Overview

below provides pointers to relevant information in the specifications to understand the standard
DRM components and if the main description is located in the ISO base media file format ([8]),

7 or the Common Encryption specification ([26]).

8

Table 18 Boxes relevant for DRM systems

| Box | Full Name / Usage | Reference |
|------|---|--------------------------|
| moof | movie fragment header One 'moof' box for each fragment, i.e. Media Segment/Subsegment. | [8], 8.32 + [5] |
| moov | movie header, container for metadata One 'moov' box per file. | [8], 8.1 |
| pssh | Protection System Specific Header Box Contains DRM specific data. pssh box version 1 (specified in Common Encryption 2 nd edition) contains a list of KIDs to allow removing duplicate 'pssh' boxes when defragmenting a file by comparing their KIDs | [26], 8.1.1 |
| saio | Sample Auxiliary Information Offsets Box Contains the offset to the IVs & subsample encryption byte ranges. | [8], 8.7.9 |
| saiz | Sample Auxiliary Information Sizes Box Contains the size of the IVs & subsample encryption byte ranges. | [8], 8.7.8 |
| senc | Sample Encryption Box Contains Initialization Vectors; and subsample ranges for a Media Segment | [21] 7.1 |
| schi | Scheme Information Box Container boxes used by that protection scheme type. | [8], 8.12.6 + [26], 4 |

| schm | Scheme Type Box Contains the encryption scheme, identified by a 4 character code, e.g. 'cenc' | [8] , 8.12.5 + [26], 4 |
|------|---|---------------------------|
| seig | Cenc Sample Encryption Information Video Group Entry A sample description containing KIDs describing sample groups in this segment, for key rotation. | [26], 6 |
| sbgp | Sample to Group Box lists a group of samples | [8],+ [26],5 |
| sgpd | Sample Group Description Box Describes properties of a sample group | [8] , 8.9.3 + [26], 5 |
| sinf | Protection Scheme Information Box Signals that the stream is encrypted | [8] , 8.12.1 + [26], 4 |
| stsd | Sample description table (codec type, initialization parameters, stream layout, etc.) | [8], 8.16 |
| tenc | Track Encryption Box Contains default encryption parameters for the entire track, e.g. default_KID | [26], 8.2.1 |

1

2 7.4. MPD support for Encryption and DRM Signaling

The MPD contains signaling of the content encryption and key management methods used to help the receiving client determine if it can possibly play back the content. The MPD elements to be used are the **ContentProtection** Descriptor elements. At least one **ContentProtection** Descriptor element SHALL be present in each **AdaptationSet** element describing encrypted content.

8 7.4.1. Use of the Content Protection Descriptor

9 7.4.1.1. ContentProtection Descriptor for *mp4protection* Scheme

10 ContentProtection descriptor with the @schemeIdUri value of А "urn:mpeg:dash:mp4protection:2011" signals that the content is encrypted with the 11 12 scheme indicated in the @value attribute. The file structure of content protection schemes is 13 specified in [8], 5.8.5.2, and the @value = 'cenc' for the Common Encryption scheme, as spec-14 ified in [21]. Although the ContentProtection Descriptor for UUID Scheme described be-15 low is usually used for license acquisition, the **ContentProtection** Descriptor with 16 @schemeIdUri="urn:mpeq:dash:mp4protection:2011" and with @cenc:de-17 fault_KID may be sufficient to acquire a license or identify a previously acquired license that 18 can be used to decrypt the Adaptation Set. It may also be sufficient to identify encrypted content 19 in the MPD when combined with license acquisition information stored in 'pssh' boxes in Initial-20 ization Segments. 21 A ContentProtection Descriptor for the mp4 Protection Scheme is used to identify the de-

23 24

22

fault KID, as specified by the 'tenc' box, using the @cenc:default_KID attribute defined in

[26], section 11.1. The value of the attribute is the KID expressed in UUID string notation.

<ContentProtection schemeIdUri="urn:mpeg:dash:mp4protection:2011" value="cenc" cenc:default_KID="34e5db32-8625-47cd-ba06-68fca0655a72"/>

- 1
- 2 When the default_KID is present on each Adaptation Set, it allows a player to determine if a
- 3 new license needs to be acquired for each Adaptation Set by comparing their default_KIDs
- 4 with each other, and with the default_KIDs of stored licenses. A player can simply compare
- 5 these KID strings and determine what unique licenses are necessary without interpreting license
- 6 information specific to each DRM system.

7 7.4.1.2. ContentProtection Descriptor for UUID Scheme

- 8 A UUID ContentProtection descriptor in the MPD may indicate the availability of a par-
- 9 ticular DRM scheme for license acquisition. An example is provided below:
- 10

```
<ContentProtection
schemeIdUri="urn:uuid:xxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx"
value="DRMNAME version"/>
```

- 11 The schemeIdUri uses a UUID URN with the UUID string equal to the registered SystemID for a
- 12 particular DRM system. A list of known DRM SystemIDs can be found in the DASH identifier
- 13 repository available here: <u>http://www.dashif.org/identifiers/content-pro-</u>
- 14 <u>tection</u>.
- 15
- 16 This is specified in [8], 5.8.5.2 and is referred to as "ContentProtection Descriptor for
- 17 UUID Scheme" in the following.

18 7.4.1.3. Protection System Specific Header Box cenc:pssh element in MPD

19 A 'pssh' box is defined by each DRM system for use with their registered SystemID, and the

- 20 same box can be stored in the MPD within a **ContentProtection** Descriptor for UUID
- scheme using an extension element in the "cenc:" namespace. Examples are provided in [7] and
 in [26] sec. 11.2.
- 23 Carrying cenc:default_KID attribute and a cenc:pssh element in the MPD is useful to 24 allow key identification, license evaluation, and license retrieval before live availability of initial-25 ization segments. This allows clients to spread license requests and avoid simultaneous requests 26 from all viewers at the instant that an Initialization Segments containing license acquisition infor-27 mation in 'pssh' becomes available. With cenc:default_KID indicated in the mp4protection 28 ContentProtection Descriptor on each Adaptation Set, clients can determine if that key and 29 this presentation is not available to the viewer (e.g. without purchase or subscription), if the key is 30 already downloaded, or which licenses the client SHOULD download before the @availabil-31 ityStartTime of the presentation based on the default_KID of each AdaptationSet element
- 32 selected.

1 7.5. Additional Content Protection Constraints

2 The following describes additional constraints for presentations to be conformant with DASH 3 264/AVC, for both MPD and ISO Media files:

4 7.5.1. ISO BMFF Content Protection Constraints

- There SHALL be identical values of default_KID in the Track Encryption Box ('tenc') of all Representation referenced by one Adaptation Set. Different Adaptation Sets may have equal or different values of default_KID.
- In the case where 'pssh' boxes are present in Initialization Segments, each Initialization
 Segment within one Adaptation Set SHALL contain an equivalent pssh box for each Sys temID, i.e. license acquisition from any Representation is sufficient to allow switching
 between Representations within the Adaptation Set without acquiring a new license.
- For "key rotation", each Movie Fragment SHOULD contain one 'pssh' in each 'moof'
 box per SystemID that contains sufficient information for the DRM system with matching SystemID to obtain protected keys for this movie fragment, when combined with:
- information from 'pssh' in 'moov' or cenc:pssh in MPD.
 This may be used to download a Root license bound to this device, necessary to
 read the key rotation Segment licenses common to all Media Segments in the case
 where the DRM is using a root and leaf license hierarchy.
 Note that the presence and use of root and leaf licenses is optional and DRM specific.
 - KID associated with each sample from 'seig' sample group description box
 - Sample to group boxes that list all the samples that use a particular KID
- Note: A 'pssh' for each SystemID in each 'moof' will likely result in duplicate
 'pssh' boxes containing some of the same KIDs, but it facilitates random access into
 live presentations, and trick play of linear content with a PVR buffer or when made available as VOD assets.
- 27 **7.5.2.** MPD Content Protections Constraints

21

22

- For an encrypted Adaptation Set, ContentProtection Descriptors SHALL always be present in the AdaptationSet element, and apply to all contained Representations.
- A ContentProtection Descriptor for the mp4 Protection Scheme with the @schemeIdUri
 value of "urn:mpeg:dash:mp4protection:2011" and @value='cenc'
 SHALL be present in the AdaptationSet element if the contained Representations are encrypted.
- 34Note that this allows clients to recognize the Adaptation Set is encrypted with common35encryption scheme without the need to understand any system specific UUID descriptors.
- The ContentProtection Descriptor for the mp4protection scheme SHOULD contain the optional attribute @cenc:default_KID. The 'tenc' box that specifies the encoded

1 track encryption parameters SHALL be considered the source of truth for the default key 2 ID value since it contains the default KID field, and is present in the movie box, as 3 specified in [26], section 8.2.1. The MPD cenc:default_KID attribute SHALL match the 4 'tenc' default_KID. 5 6 Note that this allows clients to identify the default KID from the MPD using a standard 7 location and format, and makes it accessible to general purpose clients that don't under-8 stand the system specific information formats of all DRM schemes that might be signaled. 9 The cenc:pssh element SHOULD be present in the ContentProtection Descriptor for • 10 each UUID Scheme. The base64 encoded contents of the element SHALL be equivalent to a 'pssh' box including its header. The information in the 'pssh' box SHOULD 11 12 be sufficient to allow for license acquisition. 13 Note: A player such as DASH is hosted by a browser may pass the contents of this element 14 through the Encrypted Media Extension (EME) API to the DRM system Content Decryption 15 *Module (CDM) with a SystemID equal to the Descriptor's UUID. This allows clients to acquire* 16 a license using only information in the MPD, prior to downloading Segments. 17 Below is an example of the recommended format for a hypothetical acme DRM service: $\begin{array}{c} 18\\ 19\\ 22\\ 22\\ 22\\ 22\\ 25\\ \end{array}$ <ContentProtection schemeIdUri="urn:uuid:d0ee2730-09b5-459f-8452-200e52b37567" value="Acme DRM 2.0"> <!-- base64 encoded 'pssh' box with SystemID matching the containing ContentProtection Descriptor --> <cenc:pssh> YmFzZTY0IGVuY29kZWQgY29udGVudHMgb2YgkXB zc2iSIGJveCB3aXRoIHRoaXMgU3IzdGVtSUQ= </cenc:pssh> 26 </ContentProtection> 27 The @value attribute of the ContentProtection Descriptor for UUID Scheme SHOULD 28 contain the DRM system and version in a human readable form. **Other Content Protections Constraints** 7.5.3. 29 30

In the case where the 'pssh' box element is present in the MPD and in the Initialization Segment, the 'pssh' box element in the MPD SHALL take precedence, because the parameters in the MPD will be processed first, are easier to update, and can be assumed to be up to date at the time the

- 33 MPD is fetched.
- 34 Recommended scheduling of License and key delivery:
- Request licenses on initial processing of an MPD if ContentProtection Descriptors or Initialization Segments are available with license acquisition information. This is intended to avoid a large number of synchronized license requests at MPD@availabilityStartTime.
- Prefetch licenses for a new Period in advance of its presentation time to allow license download and processing time, and prevent interruption of continuous decryption and playback. Advanced requests will also help prevent a large number of synchronized license requests during a live presentation at Period@start time.

- Store keys referenced by Sample Groups in each Segment that references them (in 'moof'/'pssh'), or deliver referenced keys before those samples may be accessed to allow continuous sample decryption and decoding during random access to all available Segments.
- Each Segment (movie fragment) SHOULD be limited to a single KID and sample group to simplify the representation and processing of key rotation.

7 7.5.4. Encryption of Different Representations

8 Representations contained in one Adaptation Set SHALL be protected by the same license for each
9 protection system ("DRM"), and SHALL have the same value of 'default_KID' in their
10 'tenc' boxes in their Initialization Segments. This is to enable seamless switching within Adaptation Sets, which is generally not possible if a new DRM license needs to be authorized, client
12 bound, generated, downloaded, and processed for each new Representation.

- 13 In the case of key rotation, if root licenses are used, the same requirement applies to the root li-
- 14 censes (one license per Adaptation Set for each DRM), and also means all Representations SHALL
- 15 have the same value of 'default_KID' in their 'tenc' boxes in their Initialization Segments.
- 16 The use of root and leaf licenses is optional and DRM specific, but leaf licenses are typically
- 17 delivered in band to allow real time license acquisition, and do not require repeating client authen-
- 18 tication, authorization, and rebuilding the security context with each key change in order to enable
- 19 continuous playback without interruption cause be key acquisition or license processing.
- 20 In cases where SD and HD and UHD Representations are contained in one presentation, different
- 21 license rights may be required for each quality level and may be sold separately. If different li-
- 22 censes are required for different quality levels, then it is necessary to create separate Adaptation
- 23 Sets for each quality level, each with a different license and value of 'default_KID'.
- 24 Representations that are equivalent resolution and bitrate but encrypted with different keys may
- 25 be included in different Adaptation Sets. Seamless switching between UHD, HD and SD Repre-
- sentations is difficult because these quality levels typically use different decryption licenses and
- 27 keys, use different DRM output rules (prohibit analog interfaces, require resolution down-scaling,
- 28 require HDCP encryption on output, etc.), and use different decoding parameters for e.g. subsam-
- 29 pling, codec, profile, bit depth, aspect ratios and color spaces.
- 30 If any Representation is encrypted in an Adaptation Set, then all must be encrypted using the same
- 31 default_KID in the Track Encryption Box ('tenc') to avoid realtime changes to the DRM
- 32 licenses and security context. KID values may change over time ("key rotation") as specified in
- 33 Common Encryption and a particular DRM system.
- For all Representations within an Adaptation Set with @bitstreamSwitching="false" (de-fault), the following parameters shall apply.
- 'tenc' default_KID shall be equal for all Representations

37 7.5.5. Encryption of Multiple Periods

- 38 Periods SHALL only change default_KID and corresponding license at the start of a new Period
- 39 corresponding to a different file. A different file is indicated by a different default_KID signaled
- 40 in the 'tenc' box in the Initialization Segment.

1 A file associated with a single license may be continued over multiple Periods by being referenced

2 by multiple Representations over multiple Periods (for instance, a program interspersed with ad

3 Periods). A client can recognize the same cenc:default_KID value and avoid having to download

4 the same license again; but the DRM system may require a complete erase and rebuild of the 5 security context, including all key material, samples in process, etc., between Periods with differ-

6 ent licenses or no license (between protected and clear Periods).

7 7.5.6. DRM System Identification

8 The DRM system is signaled in the MPD and 'pssh' boxes with a SystemID. A list of known 9 DRMs found in the DASH identifier repository available can be here: 10 http://www.dashif.org/identifiers/content-protection.

117.5.7.Protection of Media Presentations that Include SD, HD and UHD12Adaptation Sets

Per DASH IF interop points, Representations with separate keys, licenses, and license policy arecontained in different Adaptation Sets.

Adaptive bitrate switching can function automatically within an Adaptation Set without changingkeys, licenses, robustness and output rules, etc.

- 17 A player may download licenses for multiple Adaptation Sets in a Group, and seamlessly switch
- 18 between them if it is able. Seamless switching between Adaptation Sets is allowed, but not re-
- 19 quired. DASH may need to signal which Adaptation Sets are intended for seamless switching, i.e.
- 20 have identical source content, same picture aspect ratio, same exact rescaled pixel registration,
- 21 same sample description (e.g. 'avc3'), same initialization behavior (@bitstreamSwitch-
- 22 ing = true/false), same Timescale and @timescale, and are mutually time-aligned.
- 23 The DASH-IF interop points are intended to make bitrate switching within an Adaptation Set sim-24 ple and automatic, whether Representations are encrypted or not. Placement of Representations 25 in different Adaptation Sets informs players that those Representations need to be initialized with different parameters, such as a different key and license. The full initialization process is repeated 26 27 per Period. Adaptation Sets with @bitstreamSwitching = "true" only need to be initial-28 ized once per Period. Adaptation Sets with @bitstreamSwitching = "false" need to be 29 partially re-initialized on each Representation switch (to change the SPS parameter sets referenced 30 from NALs to those stored in in the containing track's 'avcC'), but most initialized parameters 31 such as timescale, codec Profile/Level, display buffer size, colorspace, etc.; and licenses and the 32 DRM system ... do not need to be changed.
- 33 Fetching and resetting keys and licenses during adaptive switching requires processing Initializa-
- tion Segments with different 'tenc' default_KID and possibly 'pssh' boxes. That may not be
- seamless, especially in browser playback where the decoders are only aware of player switching
 when an Initialization Segment flows through the MSE buffer and a needKey () event is raised
- 30 when an initializatio 37 via EME.
- 38 Note that switching between Adaptation Sets with different Media Profiles could be restricted by
- key and license policy, e.g. the user only purchased SD rights, the player only has analog output
- 40 and HD content requires a protected digital output, UHD content requires hardware protected
- 41 DRM, etc.

1 Implementations that seamlessly switch between Representations with different keys and policies

2 generally require a standardized presentation ID or content ID system that associates multiple keys

and licenses to that ID and presentation, then downloads only the keys/licenses authorized for that

user and device (e.g. SD or HD+SD). The player must then install those licenses and use player
logic to select only Representations in an Adaptation Set for which a license is installed and output

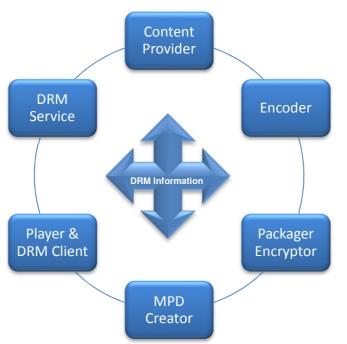
6 controls, display configuration, etc. allow playback (e.g. only Representations keyed for an in-

stalled SD license). Players and license servers without this pre-configuration protocol and adap-

8 tive switching logic will encounter key/license requests in the process of adaptive switching, and

9 may find output blocked by different license policies, user rights, etc.

1 7.6. Workflow Overview



2

3 Figure 19 Logical Roles that Exchange DRM Information and Media

Figure 19 above shows logical entities that may send or receive DRM information such as media keys, asset identifiers, licenses, and license acquisition information. A physical entity may combine multiple logical roles, and the point of origin for information, such as media keys and asset identifiers, can differ; so various information flows are possible. This is an informative example of how the roles are distributed to facilitate the description of workflow and use cases. Alternative

9 roles and functions can be applied to create conformant content.

10 Description of Logical Roles:

11 Content Provider – A publisher who provides the rights and rules for delivering protected media,
 12 also possibly source media (mezzanine format, for transcoding), asset identifiers, key identifiers

(KID), key values, encoding instructions, and content description metadata.

14 Encoder – A service provider who encodes Adaptation Sets in a specified media format, number

15 of streams, range of bitrates and resolutions, seamless switching constraints, etc., possibly deter-

16 mined by the publisher. An asset identifier needs to be assigned to each encoded track in order to

17 associate a key identifier, a Representation element in an MPD, a possible 'pssh' box in the file

18 header, and a DRM license separately downloaded.

19 Packager / Encryptor – A service provider who encrypts and packages media files, inserting

default_KID in the file header 'tenc' box, initialization vectors and subsample byte ranges in

track fragments indexed by 'saio' and 'saiz' boxes, and possibly packages 'pssh' boxes con-

- taining license acquisition information (from the DRM Provider) in the file header. Tracks that are
- 23 partially encrypted or encrypted with multiple keys require sample to group boxes and sample

1 group description boxes in each track fragment to associate different KIDs to groups of samples.

- 2 The Packager could originate values for KIDs, media keys, encryption layout, etc., then send that
- 3 information to other entities that need it, including the DRM Provider and Streamer, and probably
- 4 the Content Provider. However, the Packager could receive that information from a different point
- 5 of origin, such as the Content Provider or DRM Provider.

MPD Creator – The MPD Creator is assumed to create one or more types of DASH MPD, and
 provide indexing of Segments and/or 'sidx' indexes for download so that players can byte range
 index Subsegments. The MPD must include descriptors for Common Encryption and DRM key
 management systems, and SHOULD include identification of the default_KID for each Adapta tionSet element, and sufficient information in UUID ContentProtection Descriptor elements to
 acquire a DRM license. The default_KID is available from the Packager and any other role that
 created it, and the DRM specific information is available from the DRM Provider.

Player / DRM Client – Gets information from different sources: MPD, Media files and DRM
 License.

15 DRM Service – The DRM Provider creates licenses containing a protected media key that can
 16 only be decrypted by a trusted client.

17 The DRM Provider needs to know the default_KID and DRM SystemID and possibly other infor-

18 mation like asset ID and player domain ID in order to create and download one or more licenses

19 required for a Presentation on a particular device. Each DRM system has different license acqui-

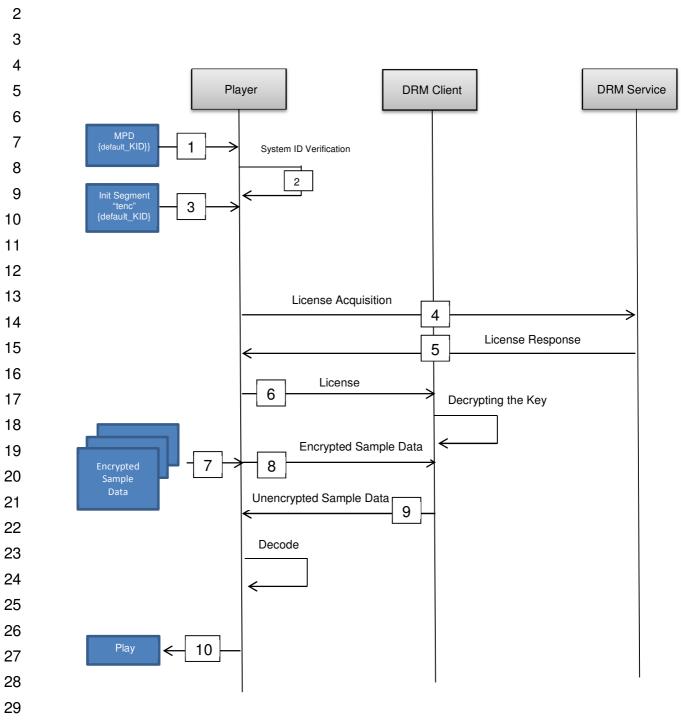
- sition information, a slightly different license acquisition protocol, and a different license format
- with different playback rules, output rules, revocation and renewal system, etc. The DRM Provider
 typically must supply the Streamer and the Packager license acquisition information for each

23 UUID ContentProtection Descriptor element or 'pssh' box, respectively.

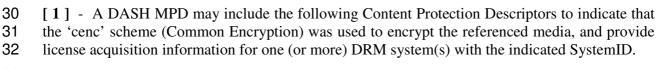
- The DRM Service may also provide logic to manage key rotation, DRM domain management,revocation and renewal and other content protection related features.
- 26
- 27

Figure 20 below shows a simple workflow with pssh information in the Initialization Segmentfor informational purpose.

- 30
- 00 04
- 31
- 32
- 33
- 34
- 35
- 36
- 37



1 Figure 20 Example of Information flow for DRM license retrieval



33 [2] – To verify whether specific DRM supported or not using System ID value from MPD.

With unique KIDs, a license request using the cenc:default_KID attribute value is sufficient
 to identify a DRM license containing that key that will enable playback of the Components, Rep-

- 3 resentations, Adaptation Sets, or Periods that the ContentProtection Descriptor element and de-
- 4 fault_KID describe.
- 5
- [3] The TrackEncryptionBox (tenc) contains default values for the IsEncrypted flag, IV_size,
 and KID for the entire track These values are used as the encryption parameters for the samples in
 this track unless over-ridden by the sample group description associated with a group of samples.
- 9 The license acquisition information could be also present in PSSH boxes in the initialization seg-
- 10 ment.
- 11 [4] Decryption Key acquisition. This could be performed either by Player or DRM Client.
- 12 [5] DRM License / Decryption Key response
- 13 [6] License Store. DRM licenses/rights need not be stored in the file in order to look up a key
- 14 using KID values stored in the file and decrypt media samples using the encryption parameters
- 15 stored in each track.
- 16 [7] Player requesting encrypted sample data.
- [8] Player provides encrypted sample data to DRM Client for decryption using decryption key.
 How the DRM system locates the identified decryption key is left to a DRM-specific method
- 19 [9] Player received unencrypted sample data from DRM Client.
- 20

21 7.7. Common Encryption *Test-DRM* Simulation

22 7.7.1. Introduction

- In order to test common encryption without the necessity to do tests for a specific DRM, or all
 supported DRMs, a common encryption *Test-DRM* simulation is defined.
- 25 Specifically the following aspects are defined for the *Test-DRM simulation*:
- To test decryption with common encryption scheme parameters, a clear key and associated
 KID is provided in a separate file.
- To test the parsing of DRM relevant fields, two different test scenarios are defined to communicate the encryption parameters in the MPD and in the movie. The latter case also includes key rotation.
- 31 In the interest of testing independently of a specific DRM system, the keys are provided directly
- 32 in clear text, in lieu of the DRM specific license information, system keys, and decryption system
- that is otherwise used to securely obtain the media keys.
- The use of an external file allows flexible referencing of the same key from different locations, toe.g. use the same key for audio, video or different Representations.

1 7.7.2. Test of Common Encryption

2 The key file location is the MPD directory or configurable in the player to avoid OS dependent
3 path references. Its file name is the KID expressed in 32 hex lower case digits with .txt extension.
4 The content is the decryption key in lower case hex digits e.g.

bdff1a347bd8e9f523f5ee6b16273d6e.txt contains:
 050526bf6d3c386ffe5fc17c93506eca

7 The key file name can be stored in the 'pssh' box to verify the creation and parsing of 'pssh'

8 information. If the 'pssh' box information is not present, the file name can also be derived 9 directly from the default KID stored in the 'tenc' box, or a cenc: default KID attribute

- 10 in the MPD.
- 11 In the test vectors 3 different test values for @schemeIdUri are defined to represent multi 12 DRMs:
- 13 0000000-0000-0000-000000000000
- 15 0000000-0000-0000-0000000000002
- 16 The test of common decryption is successful when decryption in the above cases is successful.

17 7.7.3. ContentProtection descriptor

18 The extension namespace defined in [21] is used to include default_KID and pssh parameters

19 in the **ContentProtection** elements for the test DRM above.

```
<xs:schema
   targetNamespace="urn:mpeg:cenc:2013"
   attributeFormDefault="unqualified"
   elementFormDefault="qualified"
   xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
   xmlns:cenc="urn:mpeq:cenc:2013">
   <!-- KID is a 128-bit integer written in canonical UUID string notation --> <xs:simpleType name="KeyIdType">
       <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
           Fa-f0-9]{12}"/>
       </xs:restriction>
   </xs:simpleType>
   <!-- space-delimited list of KIDs -->
   <xs:simpleType name="KeyIdListType">
       <xs:list itemType="KeyIdType" />
   </xs:simpleType>
   <!-- attribute that can be used within the DASH ContentProtection descriptor -->
   <xs:attribute name="default_KID" type="KeyIdListType"/>
  <!-- element used within system specific UUID ContentProtection descriptors -->
   <xs:element name="pssh" type="xs:base64Binary"/>
</xs:schema>
```

1 An example is provided below:

```
<ContentProtection schemeIdUri="urn:mpeg:dash:mp4protection:2011"
value="cenc" cenc:default_KID="34e5db32-8625-47cd-ba06-68fca0655a72"/>
<ContentProtection schemeIdUri="urn:uuid:0000000-0000-0000-0000-0000000000"
value="DASH264DRM v2.0">
<cenc:pssh data="cG9zc2libGUgcm9vdCBwc3NoIGxpY2Vuc2UgaW5mbw=="/>
</ContentProtection>
```

3 Here the cenc:pssh element contains the base64 encoded 'pssh' box and cenc:de-

- 4 fault_KID attribute contains the default_KID from the 'tenc' box, which is the same for 5 all Representations in the Adaptation Set.
- 6
- 7 7.7.4. Test Scenarios

8 7.7.4.1. Introduction

9 Different test scenarios are defined which are then mapped to specific test cases in [27]. The first10 test scenario uses a single key with

- 11 1. pssh and tenc parameters in the movie box
- 12 2. pssh element and tenc.default_KID parameters in the MPD.

Another test scenario implements key rotation with tenc and pssh information in the MPD.Finally, a use case for interleaving of unencrypted content is added.

15 7.7.4.2. Test Scenario 1: pssh and tenc Parameters in Movie Box

16 The simulation verifies the signaling of the DRM in the MPD, specifically the pssh and tenc 17 information as it must be exercised to access the keys.

18 The signaling of encryption scheme(s) in MPD:

- 19
 <ContentProtection schemeIdUri="urn:uuid:0000000-0000-0000-00000000000">

 20
 <ContentProtection schemeIdUri="urn:uuid:0000000-0000-0000-0000-00000000001">

 21
 <ContentProtection schemeIdUri="urn:uuid:0000000-0000-0000-0000-0000-0000000002">
- 22 The pssh box, if present, contains the base64 encoded filename of the key file.

23 7.7.4.3. Test Scenario 2: pssh and default_KID Parameters in MPD

24 The simulation verifies the encoding of the parameters in the MPD. The key file is indicated in

25 the cenc:pssh element as base64 encoded KID in lower case with .txt extension. For example,

for a KID of bdff1a347bd8e9f523f5ee6b16273d6e, the key will be in the file

- 27 bdff1a347bd8e9f523f5ee6b16273d6e.txt.
- 28 The cenc:pssh element with required base64 encoding in this case is:
- 29 <cenc:pssh "YmRmZjFhMzQ3YmQ4ZTlmNTIzZjVlZTZiMTYyNzNkNmUudHh0"/>

1 A separate key file is used for each key when key rotation is used.

2 7.7.4.4. Test Scenario 3: pssh and KID Parameters in MPD with Key Rotation

3 In this case, the pssh information may contain root license information. For the test scenario,

4 the pssh information does not contain relevant key information but is present as a place holder.

5 The static place holder is the base64 encoding of the string: "possible root pssh license 6 info", i.e.:

<cenc:pssh data="cG9zc2libGUgcm9vdCBwc3NoIGxpY2Vuc2UgaW5mbw=="/>

8 A separate key file with different \$KeyId\$ value is used for each new key.

97.7.4.5.Test Scenario 4: pssh and tenc Parameters in MPD with Key Rotation and un-10encrypted elements

This extends the previous test scenario with segments that are signaled as unencrypted that arecombined with encrypted segments.

13 8. DASH-IF Interoperability Points

14 8.1. Introduction

7

This version of the document defines Interoperability Points in this section. Earlier versions of thisdocument, especially version 2 [2] defines legacy IOPs.

17 8.2. DASH-AVC/264 main

18 8.2.1. Introduction

The scope of the DASH-AVC/264 main interoperability point is basic support of high-quality
video distribution over the top based on H.264/AVC up to 1080p. Both, live and on-demand services are supported.

22 The compliance to DASH-AVC/264 main may be signaled by a @profiles attribute with the 23 value "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264main"

24 8.2.2. Definition

- 25 A DASH client conforms to the IOP by supporting at least the following features:
- All DASH-related features as defined in section 3 of this document.
- The requirements and guidelines in section 4.9.2 for simple live operation.
- The requirements and guidelines in section 5.6.1 for server-based ad insertion.
- H.264/MPEG AVC Progressive High Profile at level 4.0 as defined in section 6.2 together
 with all AVC-related requirements and recommendation in section 6.2.

- 1 MPEG-4 HE-AAC v2 level 2 profile audio codec as defined in section 6.3. Dynamic Range 2 Control is not expected to be supported. 3 subtitle and closed captioning support 4 • using SMPTE-TT as defined in section 6.4.2 5 For On-Demand single file download is sufficient. 6 For live services and/or if key rotation is to be supported, the encapsulation 7 into ISO BMFF is necessary. 8 Using CEA-608/708 as defined in section 6.4.3. 0 9 • content protection based on common encryption and key rotation as defined in section 7.
- 10 And specifically, the client supports MPD-based parsing and movie box based parsing of 11 DRM related parameters for common encryption.

12 Content shall only be authored claiming conformance to this IOP if such a client can properly play 13 the content. In addition, the content shall follow the mandatory aspects and should take into ac-14 count the recommendations and guidelines for content authoring documented in section 3 (DASH 15 features), section 4.9.2 (simple live operation), section 5.6.1 (server-based ad insertion), AVC-16 related issues in section 6.2, section 6.3 (audio), section 6.4.2 (SMPTE-TT), section 6.4.3 (CEA-17 608/708), and section 7 (Content Protection).

18 If content is offered claiming conformance to this IOP, the content author is encouraged to use the19 HTTP-URL construction as defined in [7], section 5.1.4.

20 8.3. DASH-AVC/264 high

21 8.3.1. Introduction

The scope of the DASH-AVC/264 interoperability point is support of high-quality video distribu tion over the top based on H.264/AVC up to 1080p. Both, live and on-demand services are supported as well as features for main live and advanced ad insertion.

25 The compliance to DASH-AVC/264 may be signaled by a @profiles attribute with the value 26 "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264high"

27 8.3.2. Definition

A client that attempts to consume content generated conforming to this IOP shall support the fol-lowing features:

- All features required for DASH-264/AVC main as defined in section 8.2.
- The client requirements and recommendations for the main live operation as defined in section 4.9.3.
- 33 Content shall only be authored claiming conformance to this IOP if such a client can properly play

34 the content. In addition, the content shall follow the mandatory aspects and should take into ac-

35 count the recommendations and guidelines for content authoring documented in section 8.2

36 (DASH-264/AVC main), section 4.9.3 (main live operation), and section 5.6.2 (app-based ad in-

37 sertion).

1 If content is offered claiming conformance to this IOP, the content author is encouraged to use the 2 HTTP-URL construction as defined in [7], section 5.1.4.

3 8.4. DASH-IF IOP simple

4 8.4.1. Introduction

The scope of the DASH-IF IOP simple interoperability point is the basic support of efficient highquality video distribution over the top with HD video up to 1080p including support for HEVC 8
bit.

8 The compliance to DASH-IF IOP simple may be signaled by a @profiles attribute with the 9 value "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash-if-simple"

10 8.4.2. Definition

22

23

24

25

26

- 11 A DASH client conforms to the IOP by supporting at least the following features:
- All DASH-related features as defined in section 3 of this document.
- The requirements and guidelines in section 4.9.2 for simple live operation.
- The requirements and guidelines in section 5.6.1 for server-based ad insertion.
- H.264/MPEG AVC Progressive High Profile at level 4.0 as defined in section 6.2 together
 with all AVC-related requirements and recommendation in section 6.2.
- H.265/MPEG-H HEVC Main Profile Main Tier at level 4.1 as defined in section 6.2 together with all HEVC-related requirements and recommendation in section 6.2.
- MPEG-4 HE-AAC v2 level 2 profile audio codec as defined in section 6.3. Dynamic Range
 Control is not expected to be supported.
- subtitle and closed captioning support
 - using SMPTE-TT as defined in section 6.4.2
 - For On-Demand single file download is sufficient.
 - For live services and/or if key rotation is to be supported, the encapsulation into ISO BMFF is necessary.
 - Using CEA-608/708 as defined in section 6.4.3.
- content protection based on common encryption and key rotation as defined in section 7.
 And specifically, the client supports MPD-based parsing and movie box based parsing of DRM related parameters for common encryption.

Content shall only be authored claiming conformance to this IOP if such a client can properly play
the content. In addition, the content shall follow the mandatory aspects and should take into account the recommendations and guidelines for content authoring documented in section 3 (DASH
features), section 4.9.2 (simple live operation), section 5.6.1 (server-based ad insertion), section
6.2 (video), section 6.3 (audio), section 6.4.2 (SMPTE-TT), section 6.4.3 (CEA-608/708), and
section 7 (Content Protection).

1 If content is offered claiming conformance to this IOP, the content author is encouraged to use the

2 HTTP-URL construction as defined in [7], section 5.1.4.

3 8.5. DASH-IF IOP Main

4 8.5.1. Introduction

For the support of broad set of use cases the DASH-IF IOP Main Interoperability Point is defined.
In addition the features of DASH-264/AVC main as defined in section 8.2 and DASH-265/HEVC
as defined in section 0, the interoperability point requires DASH clients for real-time segment
parsing and 10-bit HEVC.

9 The compliance to DASH-IF IOP main may be signalled by a @profile attribute with the value 10 "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash-if-main"

11 8.5.2. Definition

15

16

17

18

A client that attempts to consume content generated conforming to this IOP shall support the fol-lowing features:

- All features required for DASH-264/AVC high as defined in section 8.3.
 - H.265/MPEG-H HEVC Main Profile Main Tier at level 4.1 as defined in section 6.2 together with all HEVC-related requirements and recommendation in section 6.2.
 - H.265/MPEG-H HEVC Main 10 Profile Main Tier at level 4.1 as defined in section 6.2 together with all HEVC-related requirements and recommendation in section 6.2.
- 19 Content shall only be authored claiming conformance to this IOP if such a client can properly play

the content. In addition, the content shall follow the mandatory aspects and should take into account the recommendations and guidelines for content authoring documented in section 8.3 and

HEVC-related issues in section 6.2.

If the content is authored such that it also conforms to DASH-264/AVC high as defined in section
8.3, then the profile identifier for DASH-264/AVC high shall be added as well. If the profile identifier is missing, the content may be considered as HEVC only content.

If content is offered claiming conformance to this IOP, the content author is encouraged to use theHTTP-URL construction as defined in [7], section 5.1.4.

28 9. Multi-Channel Audio Extension

29 9.1. Scope

The Scope of the Multichannel Audio Extension is the support of audio with additional channels
and codecs beyond the basic audio support as specified in the DASH-AVC/264 base, which is
limited to Stereo HE-AAC. Multichannel audio is widely supported in all distribution channels

limited to Stereo HE-AAC. Multichannel audio is widely supported in all distribution channels
 today, including broadcast, optical disc, and digital delivery of audio, including wide support in

34 adaptive streaming delivery.

35 It is expected that clients may choose which formats (codecs) they support.

1 9.2. Technologies

2 9.2.1. Dolby Multichannel Technologies

3 9.2.1.1. Overview

- 4 The considered technologies from Dolby for advanced audio support are:
- 5 Enhanced AC-3 (Dolby Digital Plus) [31]
- 6 Dolby TrueHD [32]

7 9.2.1.2. DASH-specific issues

- 8 In the context of DASH, the following applies:
- 9 The signaling of the different audio codecs for the codecs parameters is documented in [31]
 10 and [32], which also provides information on ISO BMFF encapsulation.
- For E-AC-3 the Audio Channel Configuration shall use the "
 tag:dolby.com, 2014:dash:audio_channel_configuration:2011" as
 defined at http://dashif.org/identifiers/audio-source-data/.

14 Table 19 Dolby Technologies: Codec Parameters and ISO BMFF encapsulation

| Codec | Codec Parameter | ISO BMFF Encapsulation | SAP type |
|--------------------|-----------------|------------------------------|----------|
| Enhanced AC-3 [31] | ec-3 | ETSI TS 102 366 Annex F [31] | 1 |
| Dolby TrueHD | mlpa | Dolby [32] | 1 |

15 **9.2.2. DTS-HD**

16 **9.2.2.1. Overview**

DTS-HD [33] comprises a number of profiles optimized for specific applications. More information about DTS-HD and the DTS-HD profiles can be found at <u>www.dts.com</u>.

19 9.2.2.2. DASH-specific issues

- 20 For all DTS formats SAP is always 1.
- The signaling of the various DTS-HD profiles is documented in DTS 9302J81100 [30]. DTS
 9302J81100 [30] also provides information on ISO BMFF encapsulation.
- Additional information on constraints for seamless switching and signaling DTS audio tracks in
 the MPD is described in DTS specification 9302K62400 [35].
- 25

Table 20: DTS Codec Parameters and ISO BMFF encapsulation

| Codec | Codec Pa- | ISO BMFF Encapsu- | SAP |
|---------------------|-----------|---------------------|------|
| | rameter | lation | type |
| DT Digital Surround | dtsc | DTS 9302J81100 [30] | 1 |

| DTS-HD High Resolution and DTS- HD Master Audio | dtsh |
|--|------|
| DTS Express | dtse |
| DTS-HD Lossless (no core) | dtsl |

1

2 **9.2.3. MPEG Surround**

3 9.2.3.1. Overview

- MPEG Surround, as defined in ISO/IEC 23003-1:2007 [34], is a scheme for coding multichannel
 signals based on a down-mixed signal of the original multichannel signal, and associated spatial
 parameters. The down-mix shall be coded with MPEG-4 High Efficiency AAC v2 according to
 section 5.3.3.
- 8 MPEG Surround shall comply with level 4 of the Baseline MPEG Surround profile.

9 9.2.3.2. DASH-specific issues

- 10 In the context of DASH, the following applies for audio codecs
- The signaling of the different audio codecs for the codecs parameters is according to
 RFC6381 [11] is documented in Table 21. Table 21 also provides information on ISO
 BMFF encapsulation.
- The content is expected to be prepared according to the MPEG-DASH Implementation
 Guidelines [7] to make sure each (sub-)segment starts with a SAP of type 1.

Table 21 Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [11] and ISO BMFF encapsula tion for MPEG Surround codec

| Codec | Codec Parameter | ISO BMFF Encapsulation | SAP type |
|--------------------|-----------------|------------------------|----------|
| MPEG Surround [34] | mp4a.40.30 | ISO/IEC 14496-14 [8] | 1 |

Note: Since MPEG Surround is based on a down-mix coded with AAC-LC and HE-AAC, for the
above mentioned "Codec Parameters" the following is implied:

20 mp4a.40.30 = AOT 2 + AOT 5 + AOT 30

21 9.2.4. MPEG-4 High Efficiency AAC Profile v2, level 6

22 9.2.4.1. Overview

- 23 Support for multichannel content is available in the HE-AACv2 Profile, starting with level 4 for
- 5.1 and level 6 for 7.1. All MPEG-4 HE-AAC multichannel profiles are fully compatible with the
- 25 DASH-AVC/264 baseline interoperability point for stereo audio, i.e. all multichannel decoders
- 26 can decode DASH-AVC/264 stereo content.

1 9.2.4.2. DASH-specific issues

- 2 In the context of DASH, the following applies for the High Efficiency AAC v2 Profile
 - The content shall be prepared according to the MPEG-DASH Implementation Guidelines [7] to make sure each (sub-)segment starts with a SAP of type 1.
- Signaling of profile levels is not supported in RFC 6381 but the channel configuration shall
 be signaled by means of the ChannelConfiguration element in the MPD.
- The signaling of MPEG-4 High Efficiency AAC v2 for the codecs parameters is according to RFC6381 [11] and is documented in Table 22. Table 22 also provides information on the ISO BMFF encapsulation.
- For all HE-AAC bitstreams, explicit backward-compatible signaling of SBR shall be used.
 - The content should be prepared incorporating loudness and dynamic range information into the bitstream also considering DRC Presentation Mode in ISO/IEC 14496-3 [12], Amd. 4.
- Decoders shall support decoding of loudness and dynamic range related information, i.e. dynamic_range_info() and MPEG4_ancillary_data() in the bitstream.

15 16

11

12

3

4

Table 22 Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [11] and ISO BMFF encapsulation

| Codec | Codec Parameter | ISO BMFF Encapsula- tion | SAP type |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|----------|
| MPEG-4 AAC Profile [12] | mp4a.40.2 | ISO/IEC 14496-14 [13] | 1 |
| MPEG-4 HE-AAC Profile [12] | mp4a.40.5 | ISO/IEC 14496-14 [13] | 1 |
| MPEG-4 HE-AAC v2 Profile [12] | mp4a.40.29 | ISO/IEC 14496-14 [13] | 1 |

Note: Since both, HE-AAC and HE-AACv2 are based on AAC-LC, for the above mentioned "Co-dec Parameters" the following is implied:

19 mp4a.40.5 = AOT 2 + AOT 5

20 9.3. Client Implementation Guidelines

Independent of the codec, a client that supports one or more codecs of multichannel sound play-back should exhibit the following characteristics:

Playback multichannel sound correctly given the client operating environment. As an example, if the audio track delivers 5.1 multichannel sound, the client might perform one or more of the following: decode the multichannel signal on the device and output either 6ch
 PCM over HDMI, or pass that multichannel audio with no changes to external AVRs, or if the device is rendering to stereo outputs such as headphones, either correctly downmix that multi-channel audio to 2-channel sound, or select an alternate stereo adaptation set, or other appropriate choices.

Adaptively and seamless switch between different bitrates as specified in the adaptation sets according to the playback clients logic. Seamless switching is defined as no perceptible interruption in the audio, and no loss of A/V sync. There is no expectation that a client can seamlessly switch between formats.

5 9.4. Extensions

6 9.4.1. General

7 9.4.1.1. Definitions

- 8 A *multichannel audio client* at least supports the following features:
- All DASH-related features as defined in section 3 of this document.
- content protection based on common encryption and key rotation as defined in section 7.
 And specifically, the client supports MPD-based parsing and movie box based parsing of DRM related parameters for common encryption.
- 13 The client implementation guidelines in section 9.3.

14 9.4.1.2. Recommendations

15 If content is offered claiming conformance to any extension in this section, the content author is16 encouraged to use the HTTP-URL construction as defined in [7], section 5.1.4.

17 9.4.2. Dolby Extensions

18 **9.4.2.1.** Introduction

- 19 For the support of Dolby advanced audio support, two additional extensions are defined.
- 20 Compliance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with Enhanced AC-3 (Dolby Digital Plus) 21 [31] may be signaled by an **@profile** attribute with the value 22 "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#ec-3".
- 23 Compliance to DASH-IF multichannel extension with Dolby TrueHD may be signaled by an 24 @profile attribute with the value "http://dashif.org/guide-25 lines/dashif#mlpa".

26 9.4.2.2. Supporters

These extensions are supported by the following DASH IF members: Dolby, DTS, Fraunhofer,BuyDRM, Sony.

29 9.4.2.3. Definition

- Content may be authored claiming conformance to *DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with Enhanced AC-3*
- if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
- if a client can properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
- all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1

| 1 2 | • Enhanced AC-3 (Dolby Digital Plus) [31] and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.1.2 | | | |
|----------------|---|--|--|--|
| 3 4 | Content may be authored claiming conformance to DASH-IF multichannel extension with Dolby TrueHD | | | |
| 5 | • if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and | | | |
| 6 | • if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features | | | |
| 7 | • all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1 | | | |
| 8 | • Dolby TrueHD and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.1.2 | | | |
| 9 | 9.4.3. DTS-HD Interoperability Points | | | |
| 10 | 9.4.3.1. Introduction | | | |
| 11 | For the support of DTS advanced audio support, four additional extensions are defined. | | | |
| 12 13 14 | Compliance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with DTS Digital Surround may be sig- naled by a <code>@profile</code> attribute with value "http://dashif.org/guide- lines/dashif#dtsc". | | | |
| 15 16 17 | Compliance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with DTS-HD High Resolution and DTS- HD Master Audio may be signaled by a @profile attribute with value "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#dtsh" | | | |
| 18 19 | Compliance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with DTS Express may be signaled by a @profile attribute with value "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#dtse" | | | |
| 20 21 22 | Compliance to DASH-IF multichannel extension with DTS-HD Lossless (no core) may be signaled by a @profile attribute with value "http://dashif.org/guide- lines/dashif#dtsl" | | | |
| 23 | 9.4.3.2. Supporters | | | |
| 24 25 | These extensions are supported by the following DASH IF members: Dolby, DTS, Fraunhofer, BuyDRM, Sony. | | | |
| 26 | 9.4.3.3. Definition | | | |
| 27 28 | Content may be authored claiming conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with DTS Digital Surround | | | |
| 29 | • if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and | | | |
| 30 | • if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features | | | |
| 31 | • all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1 | | | |
| 32 | • DTS and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.2.2 | | | |
| 33 34 | Content may be authored claiming conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with DTS-HD High Resolution and DTS-HD Master Audio | | | |
| 35 | • if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and | | | |
| | DASH-IF Interoperability Points v3.0 | | | |

1 • if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features 2 all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1 3 DTS-HD High Resolution and DTS-HD Master Audio and the DASH-specific features • 4 defined in section 9.2.2.2 5 Content may be authored claiming conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with 6 DTS Express 7 • if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and 8 • if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features 9 all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1 • 10 • DTS-HD Express and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.2.2 11 Content may be authored claiming conformance to DASH-IF multichannel extension with DTS-HD Lossless (no core) 12 13 • if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and 14 • if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features

- all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
- DTS-HD Lossless (no core) and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.2.2

17 9.4.4. MPEG Surround Interoperability Points

18 9.4.4.1. Introduction

- 19 For the support of MPEG Surround advanced audio support the following extension is defined.
- 20 Compliance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with MPEG Surround according to 21 ISO/IEC 23003-1:2007 [34] may be signaled by an @profile attribute with the value 22 "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#mps".

23 9.4.4.2. Supporters

These extensions are supported by the following DASH IF members: Dolby, DTS, Fraunhofer,
BuyDRM, Sony.

26 9.4.4.3. Definition

- 27 Content may be authored claiming conformance to *DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with* 28 *MPEG Surround*
- if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
- if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
- all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
- ISO/IEC 23003-1:2007 and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.3.2

1 9.4.5. MPEG HE-AAC Multichannel Interoperability Points

2 9.4.5.1. Introduction

Compliance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with HE-AACv2 level 4 [12] may be signaled by an @profile attribute with the value "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#heaac-mc51".

6 Compliance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with HE-AACv2 level 6 [12] may be sig7 naled by an @profile attribute with the value "http://dashif.org/guide8 lines/dashif#heaac-mc71".

9 9.4.5.2. Supporters

10 These extensions are supported by the following DASH IF members: Dolby, DTS, Fraunhofer,11 BuyDRM, Sony.

- 12 9.4.5.3. Definition
- Content may be authored claiming conformance to *DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with HE-AACv2 level 4*
- if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
- if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
- all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
- HE-AACv2 level 4 [12] and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.4.2

Content may be authored claiming conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with
 HE-AACv2 level 6

- if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
- if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
- all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
- HE-AACv2 level 6 [12] and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.4.2

Annex A Examples for Profile Signalling

2 Example 1

```
In this case DASH-AVC/264 content is offered, but in addition a non-conforming Adaptation
Set is added.
```

```
5 Here is an example for an MPD:
```

6 7

8

9

10

11

12

```
mand:2011, http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
```

MPD@profiles="urn:mpeq:dash:profile:isoff-on-demand:2011,

- o AdaptationSet@profiles ="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
- o AdaptationSet@profiles ="urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-on-demand:2011"

```
13 Pruning process for IOP http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264 results in
```

```
14
15
```

16

44

```
• MPD@profiles ="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
```

```
o AdaptationSet@profiles ="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
```

```
o AdaptationSet@profiles ="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
```

17 It is now required that the pruned MPD conforms to DASH-AVC/264.

18 Example 2

```
    In this case DASH-AVC/264 content is offered, but in addition a non-conforming Adaptation
    Set is added and one DASH-IF Example Extension Adaptation Set is added with the virtual
```

21 IOP signal http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#extension-example.

Here is an example for an MPD:

| 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 | MPD@profiles ="urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-on-demand:2011, http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264, http://dashif.org/guide- lines/dashif#extension-example" @id = 1, AdaptationSet@profiles ="urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-on- demand:2011, http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264" @id = 2, AdaptationSet@profiles ="http://dashif.org/guide- lines/dash264" @id = 3, AdaptationSet@profiles ="urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-on- demand:2011, http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#extension-ex- ample" |
|--|---|
| 33 | Pruning process for profile http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264 results in |
| 34 35 36 37 38 | MPD@profiles="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264" @id = 1, AdaptationSet@profiles="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264" @id = 2, AdaptationSet@profiles="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264" |
| 39 | It is now required that the pruned MPD conforms to DASH-AVC/264. |
| 40 41 | Pruning process for profile http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#extension-example results in |
| 42 43 | MPD@profiles="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264" o @id = 3, AdaptationSet@profiles="http://dashif.org/guide- |

lines/dashif# extension-example"

It is now required that the pruned MPD conforms to DASH-IF Example Extension Adaptation
 Set.

3 Annex B Live Services - Use Cases and Architec-

5 **B.1 Baseline Use cases**

6 B.1.1 Use Case 1: Live Content Offered as On-Demand

In this case content that was distributed as live is offered in a separate Media Presen-tation as On-Demand Content.

9 **B.1.2** Use Case 2: Scheduled Service with known duration and Op-10 erating at live edge

In this case a service started a few minutes ago and lasts 30 minutes. The duration is known exactly and also all segment URLs are known. The timeshift buffer is short. This may for example be a live service for which the service provider wants to ensure that only a small window is accessible. The content is typically be pre-canned, but offered in a scheduled manner.

16B.1.3Use Case 3: Scheduled Service with known duration and Op-17erating at live edge and time shift buffer

18 In this case a service started a few minutes ago and lasts 30 minutes. The duration is 19 known exactly and also all segment URLs are known. The timeshift buffer is long. This 20 may for example be a service for which the service provider wants to ensure that the 21 content is made available in a scheduled manner, e.g. no client can access the content 22 earlier than scheduled by the content provider. However, after the live edge is com-23 pleted, the content is available for 24h. The content is typically pre-canned.

24B.1.4Use Case 4: Scheduled Live Service known duration, but un-25known Segment URLs

In this case a live service started a few minutes ago and lasts 30 minutes. The duration is known exactly but the segment URLs are unknown, as for example some advertise-

28 ment may be added on the fly. Otherwise this service is similar to use case 3.

29 B.1.5 Use Case 5: 24/7 Live Service

In this case a live service started that may have started a long time ago is made available. Ad breaks and operational updates may be done with a 30sec pre-warning. The duration is unknown and also the segment URLs, the exact set of provided media com-

33 ponents (different language tracks, subtitles, etc.) are unknown, as for example some

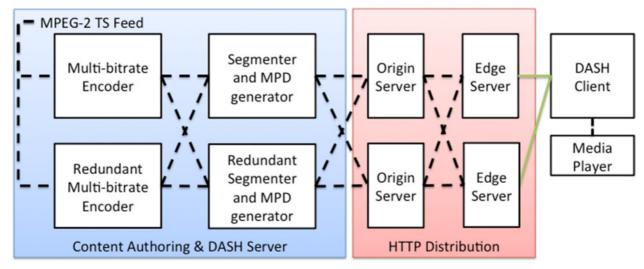
34 advertisement may be added on the fly. Otherwise this service is similar to use case 3.

35 **B.1.6 Use Case 6: Approximate Media Presentation Duration Known**

- 36 In this case a live service starts at a specific time. The duration is known approximately
- 37 and also all segment URLs are known for the approximate duration. Towards the end
- 38 of the Media Presentation, the Media Presentation duration may be extended or may
- 39 be finally determined by providing an update of the MPD.

1

2 **B.2 Baseline Architecture for DASH-based Live Service**



3 4

Figure 21 Typical Deployment Scenario for DASH-based live services

5 The figure depicts a redundant set-up for Live DASH with unicast. Function redundancy 6 is added to mitigate the impact of function failures. The redundant functions are typi-7 cally connected to multiple downstream functions to mitigate link failure impacts.

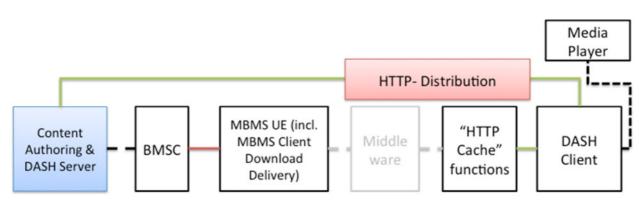
8 An MPEG2-TS stream is used often as feed into the encoder chain. The multi-bitrate 9 encoder produces the required number of Representations for each media component 10 and offers those in one Adaptation Set. In the context of this document is assumed that content is offered in the ISO BMFF live profile with the constraints according to v2 of 11 12 this document. The encoder typically locks to the system clock from the MPEG2-TS 13 stream. The encoder forwards the content to the segmenter, which produces the actual 14 DASH segments and handles MPD generation and updates. Content Delivery Network (CDN) technologies are typically used to replicate the content to multiple edge servers. 15 Note: the CDN may include additional caching hierarchy layers, which are not depicted 16 17 here.

- 18 Clients fetch the content from edge servers using HTTP (green connection) according 19 to the MPEG-DASH and DASH-IF IOP specification. Different protocols and delivery 20 formats may be used within the CDN to carry the DASH segments from the segmenter 21 to the Edge Server. For instance, the edge server may use HTTP to check with its 22 parent server when a segment is not (yet) in the local cache. Or, segments may be 23 pushed using IP Multicast from the origin server to relevant edge servers. Other reali-24 zations are possible, but are outside of the normative scope of this document.
- In some deployments, the live service is augmented with ad insertion. In this case,
 content may not be generated continuously, but may be interrupted by ads. Ads itself
 may be personalized, targeted or regionalized.

28 **B.3 Distribution over Multicast**

29 This section describes a baseline architecture for DASH Live Services for broadcast

- distribution. The intention of the baseline architecture is in particular to identify robust-
- 31 ness and failure issue and give guidance on procedures to recover.





3

Figure 22 Typical Deployment Scenario for DASH-based live services partially offered through MBMS (unidirectional FLUTE distribution)

4 The same content authoring and DASH server solution as shown in Figure 1 are considered in this baseline architecture. The DASH Segmenter (cf. Fig.1) provides DASH 5 6 segments of typically one quality representation into the BM-SC, which sends the seq-7 ments using MBMS Download (as sequence of files using IETF FLUTE protocol) to the MBMS User Equipment (UE). The MBMS UE includes the needed MBMS download 8 9 delivery client functions to recover the media segments from the FLUTE reception. The 10 MBMS UE makes the segments through a local HTTP Cache function available to the 11 DASH client. The DASH client uses HTTP (green line) to retrieve the segments from 12 the device local cache.

13 In case the MBMS reception is not possible for that Video Session, the DASH client 14 can use unicast HTTP to acquire the stream (according to previous section).

15 Note, the objective of the client architecture realization here is on using a generic DASH client for unicast and broadcast. More customized implementations are possible. 16

B.4 Typical Problems in Live Distribution 17

18 **B.4.1** Introduction

19 Based on the deployment architectures in Figure 21 and Figure 22 a few typical prob-20 lems in DASH-based ABR distribution are explained.

21 **B.4.2 Client Server Synchronization Issues**

22 In order to access the DASH segments at the proper time as announced by the seg-23 ment availability times in the MPD, client and server need to operate in the same time 24 source, in general a globally accurate wall-clock, for example provided by NTP or GPS. 25 There are different reasons why the DASH client and the media generation source may not have identical time source, such as 26

- 27 DASH client is off because it does not have any protocol access to accurate • 28 timing. This may for example be the case for DASH clients that are running in 29 the browser or on top of a general-purpose HTTP stack according to RFC 2616 30 [22]. 31
- DASH client clock drifts against the system clock and the DASH client is not 32 synchronizing frequently enough against the time-source. 33
 - The segmenter synchronized against a different time source than DASH client. •
- There may be unknown delay on the ingest to the server/cache whether the 34 • segment is accessible. This is specifically relevant if MBMS is used as the con-35 tribution link resulting in transport delay. 36

- It may also be that the MPD provides the availability times at the segmenter, but the actual availability should be the one on the origin server.
- There may be a delay from segmenter to the origin server which is known by edge/origin, but there may not be sufficient ways to signal this delay.

5 **B.4.3** Synchronization Loss of Segmenter

6 The segmenter as depicted in Figure 21 may lose synchronization against the input 7 timeline for reasons such as power-outage, cord cuts, CRC losses in the incoming 8 signals, etc. In this case:

- Loss of synchronization may result that the amount of lost media data cannot
 be predicted which makes the generation of continuous segments difficult.
- The Segmenter cannot predict and correct the segment timeline based on me dia presentation timestamps, since the presentation timeline may contain a dis continuity due to the synchronization loss
 - a loss of sync (e.g. CRC failure on the input stream)
 - o a power glitch on the source
 - o someone pulling a cable
- There are cases where no media segments are available, but the MPD author
 knows this and just wants to communicate this to the receiver.

19**B.4.4**Encoder Clock Drift

In certain cases, the MBR encoder is slaved to the incoming MPEG-2 TS, i.e. it reuses
 the media time stamps also for the ISO BMFF.

- What may occur that the encoder clock drifts between the sender and the receivers (longer term issue) , e.g. due to encoder clock tolerance
- 23 24 25

26

27

28

29 30

22

14

15

16

1 2

3

4

- Example: Encoder produces frame every 39.97ms instead of 40ms
- Tolerance in MPEG-2 TS: 1 frame every 18 minutes
- This may create issues in particular when an existing stream like for satellite is transcoded and segmented into DASH representations.
- Annex A.8 of ISO 23009-1 handles drift control of the media timeline, but the impact on the segment availability time (i.e. MPD updates) is not considered or suggested.
- In particular when the segment fetching engine of the client is only working with
 the segment availability timeline (so is not parsing the presentation timeline out
 of the segments), the segment fetching engine will not fetch the segments with
 the correct interval, leading to buffer underruns or increased e2e delay.
- There is practical evidence that this is a problem in actual deployments, may result in drifts of minutes over hours.

37 B.4.5 Segment Unavailability

When a server cannot serve a requested segment it gives an HTTP 404 response. If the segment URL is calculated according to the information given in the MPD, the client can often interpret the 404 response as a possible synchronization issue, i.e. its time is not synchronized to the time offered in the MPD.

In the MBMS case, a 404 response is also likely to be caused by non-reparabletransport errors. This is even more likely if it has been possible to fetch segments ac-

1 cording to the MPD information earlier. Although the client M/W, which is normally lo-

2 cated in the same device as the DASH player, knows what segments have been deliv-

3 ered via broadcast and which ones are missing in a sequence, it cannot indicate this

4 to the DASH client using standard HTTP responses to requests for media segments.

5 **B.4.6** Swapping across Redundant Tools

6 In case of failures, redundant tools kick in. If the state is not fully maintained across 7 redundant tools, the service may not be perceived continuous by DASH client. Problems that may happen at the encoder, that redundant encoders do not share the same 8 9 timeline or the timeline is interrupted. Depending on the swap strategy ("hot" or "warm"), the interruptions are more or less obvious to the client. Similar issues may 10 11 happen if segmenters fail, for example the state for segment numbering is lost.

12 **B.4.7 CDN** Issues

- 13 Typical CDN operational issues are the following:
- 14 Cache Poisoning – at times segment generation may be erroneous. The en-15 coder can produce a corrupt segment, or the segment can become corrupted during upload to origin. This can happen for example if encoder connectivity fails 16 in mid segment upload, leading to a malformed segment (with the correct name) 17 being sent to edge and caching servers. The CDN then caches this corrupt seg-18 ment and continues to deliver it to fulfill future requests, leading to widespread 19 20 client failures.
- 21 • Cache inconsistency – with a dual origin scheme, identically named segments 22 can be produced with slight differences in media time, due to clock drift or other encoder issues. These segments are then cached by CDNs and used to re-23 24 spond to client requests. If segments from one encoder are mixed with seg-25 ments of another, it can lead to discontinuous playback experiences on the clients. 26

27 **B.4.8** High End-to-end Latency

- 28 End-to-end latency (also known as hand-waving latency) is defined as the accumulated 29 delay between an action occurring in front of the camera and that action being visible 30 in a buffered player. It is the sum of
- 31 1. Encoder delay in generating a segment.
- 32 2. Segment upload time to origin server from the encoder.
- 33 3. Edge server segment retrieval time from origin
- 34 4. Segment retrieval time by the player from the edge server
- 5. The distance back from the live point at which the player chooses to start play-35 36 back. 37
 - 6. Buffering time on the player before playback commences.
- 38 In steps 1 through 4, assuming non-chunked HTTP transfer, the delay is a linear func-39 tion of the segment duration. Overly conservative player buffering can also introduce 40 unnecessary delay, as can choosing a starting point behind the live point. Generally the further behind live the player chooses to play, the more stable the delivery system 41 42 is, which leads to antagonistic demands on any production system of low latency and 43 stability.

1 B.4.9 Buffer Management & Bandwidth Estimation

The main user experience degradations in video streaming are rebuffering events. At the same time, user experience is influenced by the quality of the video (typically determined by the bitrate) as well as at least for certain cases on the end-to-end latency. In order to request the access bitrate, the client does a bandwidth estimation typically based on the history and based on this and the buffer level in the client it decides to maintain or switch Representations.

8 In order to compensate bandwidth variations, the client buffers some media data prior 9 to play-out. More time buffer results less buffer under runs and less rebuffering, but 10 increases end-to-end latency. In order to maximize the buffer in the client and minimize 11 the end-to-end latency the DASH client would like to request the media segment as 12 close as possible to its actual segment availability start time. However, this may cause 13 issues in the playout as the in case of bitrate variations, the buffer may drain quickly 14 and result in playout starvation and rebuffering.

15 B.4.10 Start-up Delay and Synchronization Audio/Video

At the start-up and joining, it is relevant that the media playout is initiated, but that the delay at start is reasonable and that the presentation is enabled such that audio and video are presented synchronously. As audio and video Representations typically are offered in different sampling rates, and segments of audio and video are not aligned at segment boundaries. Hence, for proper presentation at startup, it is necessary that the DASH client schedules the presentation at the presentation time aligned to the over media presentation timeline.

23 **B.5 Advanced Use Cases**

24 B.5.1 Introduction

25 Based on the above issues a few advanced use cases are considered.

26 B.5.2 Use Case 7: Live Service with undetermined end

In this case a live service started that may have started a long time ago is made available. The MPD update may be done with a 30sec pre-warning. The duration is unknown exactly but the segment URLs are unknown, as for example some advertisement may be added on the fly. Otherwise this service is similar to use case 3.

31 B.5.3 Use Case 8: 24/7 Live Service with canned advertisement

In this case a live service started that may have started a long time ago is made available. The MPD update may be done with a 30sec pre-warning. The duration is unknown exactly but the segment URLs are unknown, as for example some advertisement may be added on the fly. The advertisement itself is not a dynamic service, but available on a server as a pre-canned advertisement.

37B.5.4Use case 9: 24x7 live broadcast with media time discontinui-38ties

39 In other use cases, the content provider splices content such as programs and ads with 40 independent modia timelines at the content provider

40 independent media timelines at the content provider.

1 B.5.5 Use case 10: 24x7 live broadcast with Segment discontinuities

Based on the discussions above, interruptions in encoding, etc., but presentation andmedia timelines resume after loss of some segments.

4